Welcome to Newcastle University. As one of the UK's leading research universities we regard research students as a particularly important part of our academic community. The graduate culture, its development and enhancement, is a key priority in our Teaching and Learning Strategy. We are fully committed to the training of our research students so that they produce high quality research and further develop their skills. In addition to the opportunities within your subject area to work with other researchers, you will be able to meet and interact with researchers from other disciplines in the school and faculty. Each Faculty has a Dean, responsible for postgraduate students, who oversees the training programme and ensures that arrangements are in place to support each student's progress through his or her research degree.

This *Handbook for Research Students* contains a wealth of information about the nature and level of support you may expect to receive during your study. Use it, and use our facilities, advice and support services during your studies to enhance your success.

May I wish you the very best success with your studies.

**Professor Ella Ritchie**

Pro-Vice-Chancellor for Teaching and Learning
Section One - University Information

Important information for arrival at Newcastle University

Dates of Terms and Semesters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Academic Year</th>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Start Date</th>
<th>End Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2006-07</td>
<td>Autumn</td>
<td>Monday 25 September 2006</td>
<td>Friday 15 December 2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spring</td>
<td>Monday 8 January 2007</td>
<td>Friday 23 March 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Summer</td>
<td>Monday 23 April 2007</td>
<td>Friday 15 June 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Semester 1</td>
<td>Monday 25 September 2006</td>
<td>Friday 26 January 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Semester 2</td>
<td>Monday 29 January 2007</td>
<td>Friday 15 June 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2007-08</td>
<td>Autumn</td>
<td>Monday 24 September 2007</td>
<td>Friday 14 December 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spring</td>
<td>Monday 7 January 2008</td>
<td>Friday 14 March 2008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Summer</td>
<td>Monday 14 April 2008</td>
<td>Friday 13 June 2008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Semester 1</td>
<td>Monday 24 September 2007</td>
<td>Friday 25 January 2008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Semester 2</td>
<td>Monday 28 January 2008</td>
<td>Friday 13 June 2008</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Registration

Every student at Newcastle University is required to register with the University at the start of his or her programme of study and normally at the beginning of each subsequent academic year that he or she remains a student. Registering confers on each person who undertakes the process an official status as a student of the University.

Information about how and when to register is sent to all new and returning students before the beginning of each academic year. If you require details on registration, you should contact your Graduate School Office. Details are also available at www.ncl.ac.uk/pre-arrival.

Research students who are not in Newcastle during the main registration period may register by post and should contact the relevant Graduate School or the Student Progress Service (see Part One) in advance of the main registration period if they wish to do so.

All research students must register for each year of their minimum required period of registration as specified in the regulations for the relevant degree.

Once the minimum required period of registration has been completed, there are various options open to research students who remain eligible to submit a thesis. These are as follows:

1. A research student may, if his or her supervisor requires it or if he or she chooses, continue to register as a full-time or part-time candidate. Such students will be entitled to continue using University facilities and will be entitled to normal supervision at this stage are likely to need an extension of time in which to submit their thesis, and should consult their supervisor about applying for an extension.

2. A research student may, subject to the approval of the supervisor, register as a 'full-time (writing-up)' or 'part-time (writing-up)' candidate. The full-time (writing-up) mode of registration is open only to students who have completed the minimum required period of registration as full-time candidates. Students registering as 'writing-up' will be entitled to use University library and computing facilities but will not be entitled to receive normal supervision.

3. A research student may, subject to the approval of the supervisor, not register at all for the remainder of the period in which he or she is eligible to submit a thesis. Such students will not be entitled to use University library or computing facilities and will not be entitled to receive normal supervision.

The respective fees payable by candidates registering in accordance with paragraphs 1 or 2 above are set out in the University Fees Schedule. No fees are payable in the case of candidates who, in accordance with paragraph 3 above, do not register.

After you have registered, you may collect your SMART CARD. All students need a Smart Card in order to use the University Library, Sports Centre, some Computing (ISS) facilities and the Students’ Union. In addition, you have 24-hour access to the OLUA cluster and the cluster rooms in the Bedson Building. Your Smart Card will contain a digital photograph and brief details including your name, programme of study and card expiry date. Once you have obtained your Smart Card, you will keep it for the duration of your studies, although you will need to go through the process of Registration at the start of each new academic year for the card to remain active. There will be no charge for your Smart Card, but if you lose it there is a charge of £10 for a replacement.
Note:
This version of the Handbook has been provided to new research students at the beginning of the 2006-07 academic year. The Handbook is also available on the University website at www.ncl.ac.uk/internal/research-handbook.

The website version is updated annually. Much of the content remains the same. However, in future years you may wish to download copies of new or revised information to include in your file.
CONTENTS

Part One - Introduction
Introduction by the Pro-Vice-Chancellor
Important Information upon arrival
Dates of Terms and Semesters
Registration
Contents for Section One
Useful Contacts

Part Two – Financial Matters, Facilities And Services
Tuition Fees
Childcare Funding and Support
Financial Support
Council Tax
Travel Insurance for Students
Disability Support Service
International Scholarships and Bursaries
The Library
Information Systems and Services (ISS)
Careers Service
Graduate Schools
Student Advice Centre
Accommodation Office
Student Counselling Service
Chaplaincy
Medical Matters
Health and Safety
Language Centre
Students’ Union
U.N.C.L.E. University of Newcastle Children’s Loan Equipment Scheme
Sport in the University

Part Three – Personal Matters
Sources of Advice and Assistance for Postgraduate Research Students
Postgraduate Student Support Officer
Study Skills
Crime Prevention and Personal Safety
Information for International Students
Payments for Teaching and Demonstrating Duties

Part Four – Academic Matters: University Regulations
General Regulations
Degree of Master of Philosophy
and Examination Conventions
Degree of Doctor of Philosophy
(Rules for Staff Candidates)
Degrees of Doctor of Letters; Doctor of Engineering; Doctor of Laws; Doctor of Science in Medicine or in Science or in Engineering or in Agriculture and Biological Sciences
Rules for the Submission of Work for Higher Degrees
Rules for the Form of Theses

Part Five - Academic Matters: University Guidelines and Policies for Research
Code of Practice for Research Degree Programmes
Research Training Portfolio
Guidelines for Research Students
Guidelines for Supervisors of Research Students
Guidelines on Good Practice for Research Students
Guidelines on Good Practice in Research Supervision
University Handbook for Examiners of Research Degrees by Theses
Standards of Academic Conduct
Guidelines on External Funding – RIS Contributions
Advice for Collaborative Studentships
What to do when your research nears completion
Code of Good Practice in Research

Part Six – Academic Matters: Policies and Procedures
Academic Appeals Procedure
Procedure for Assessment Irregularities
Dignity at Work and Study - Code of Practice for Staff and Students
Equal Opportunities Policy
Race Equality Policy
Policy and Procedure on Public Interest Disclosure
Student Disciplinary Procedures
Student Complaints Procedure
Withdrawing from the University
Policy for Intellectual Property and Research Studentships
Policy and Procedure for Investigating Allegations of Research Misconduct (for staff)
Copyright Licence Agreement
Student Complaint Form

Part Seven – Faculty / School Information
(To be provided by your Graduate School and / or your academic school or research group.)

Part Eight – Your records
(Use this section to keep your records of your research.)
Useful Contacts

The most important contacts are the three Faculty Graduate Schools.

**Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences Graduate School**

*7th Floor Daysh Building (NB – access via 5th Floor Claremont Tower)*

Newcastle University
Newcastle upon Tyne
NE1 7RU
Telephone: +44 (0) 191 222 5503
Fax: +44 (0) 191 222 7001
E-mail: hss.gradschool@ncl.ac.uk

**Faculty of Medical Sciences Graduate School**

Medical School
Framlington Place
Newcastle University
Newcastle upon Tyne
NE2 4HH
Telephone: +44 (0) 191 222 7002
Fax: +44 (0) 191 222 6521
E-mail: med-pgenquiries@ncl.ac.uk

**Faculty of Science, Agriculture & Engineering Graduate School**

Ground Floor, Agriculture Building
Newcastle University
Newcastle upon Tyne
NE1 7RU
Telephone: + 44 (0) 191 222 6086
Fax: +44 (0) 191 222 8533
E-mail: sage.gradschool@ncl.ac.uk
### Other Contacts:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Service</th>
<th>Telephone / Fax</th>
<th>E-mail</th>
<th>Website</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Accommodation Office</td>
<td>0191 222 6360</td>
<td><a href="mailto:Accommodation-enquiries@ncl.ac.uk">Accommodation-enquiries@ncl.ac.uk</a> and</td>
<td><a href="http://www.ncl.ac.uk/accommodation">www.ncl.ac.uk/accommodation</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fax: 0191 222</td>
<td><a href="mailto:private-rented-accommodation@ncl.ac.uk">private-rented-accommodation@ncl.ac.uk</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6313</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Careers Service</td>
<td>0191 222 7748</td>
<td><a href="mailto:careers@ncl.ac.uk">careers@ncl.ac.uk</a></td>
<td><a href="http://www.careers.ncl.ac.uk">www.careers.ncl.ac.uk</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chaplaincy</td>
<td>0191 222 6341</td>
<td><a href="mailto:chaplaincy@ncl.ac.uk">chaplaincy@ncl.ac.uk</a></td>
<td><a href="http://www.ncl.ac.uk/chaplaincy">www.ncl.ac.uk/chaplaincy</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Childcare</td>
<td>0191 222 3599</td>
<td><a href="mailto:Childcare@ncl.ac.uk">Childcare@ncl.ac.uk</a></td>
<td><a href="http://www.ncl.ac.uk/student-support/chilcare">www.ncl.ac.uk/student-support/chilcare</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Childrens Loan Equipment (UNCLE)</td>
<td>0191 239 3962</td>
<td><a href="mailto:Uncle.union@ncl.ac.uk">Uncle.union@ncl.ac.uk</a></td>
<td><a href="http://www.unionsociety.co.uk/main/advice/uncle">www.unionsociety.co.uk/main/advice/uncle</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Counselling Service</td>
<td>0191 222 7699</td>
<td><a href="mailto:Student-counselling@ncl.ac.uk">Student-counselling@ncl.ac.uk</a></td>
<td><a href="http://www.ncl.ac.uk/counselling-wellbeing">www.ncl.ac.uk/counselling-wellbeing</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disability Service</td>
<td>0191 222 7623</td>
<td><a href="mailto:Disability.Support@ncl.ac.uk">Disability.Support@ncl.ac.uk</a></td>
<td><a href="http://www.ncl.ac.uk/disability-support">www.ncl.ac.uk/disability-support</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finance Office (Cashiers)</td>
<td>0191 222 5215</td>
<td><a href="mailto:cash@ncl.ac.uk">cash@ncl.ac.uk</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finance Office (Tuition Fees)</td>
<td>0191 222 5520</td>
<td><a href="mailto:tuition-fees@ncl.ac.uk">tuition-fees@ncl.ac.uk</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Financial Assistance</td>
<td>0191 222 6152</td>
<td><a href="mailto:Student.fin-supp@ncl.ac.uk">Student.fin-supp@ncl.ac.uk</a></td>
<td><a href="http://www.ncl.ac.uk/student-support/financialadmin">www.ncl.ac.uk/student-support/financialadmin</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>/7247</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Office</td>
<td>0191 222 8152</td>
<td><a href="mailto:International.office@ncl.ac.uk">International.office@ncl.ac.uk</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Language Centre</td>
<td>0191 222 7535</td>
<td><a href="mailto:Language.centre@ncl.ac.uk">Language.centre@ncl.ac.uk</a></td>
<td><a href="http://www.ncl.ac.uk/langcen">www.ncl.ac.uk/langcen</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occupational Health</td>
<td>0191 222 7344</td>
<td></td>
<td><a href="http://www.ncl.ac.uk/occupationalhealth/">www.ncl.ac.uk/occupationalhealth/</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fax: 222 7417</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postgraduate Student Support</td>
<td>0191 222 3479</td>
<td><a href="mailto:Studentsupport.retention@ncl.ac.uk">Studentsupport.retention@ncl.ac.uk</a></td>
<td><a href="http://www.ncl.ac.uk/student-support/postgraduate">www.ncl.ac.uk/student-support/postgraduate</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Research and Innovation Services</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><a href="http://www.ncl.ac.uk/ris">www.ncl.ac.uk/ris</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Student Advice Centre</td>
<td>0191 239 3979</td>
<td><a href="mailto:Student-advice-centre@ncl.ac.uk">Student-advice-centre@ncl.ac.uk</a></td>
<td>Via “SAC” loop at <a href="http://www.unionsociety.co.uk">www.unionsociety.co.uk</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Student Progress Service</td>
<td>0191 222 6587</td>
<td><a href="mailto:Student-Progress@ncl.ac.uk">Student-Progress@ncl.ac.uk</a></td>
<td><a href="http://www.ncl.ac.uk/spo">www.ncl.ac.uk/spo</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Students' Union (The Union Society)</td>
<td>0191 239 3900</td>
<td><a href="mailto:Union.society@ncl.ac.uk">Union.society@ncl.ac.uk</a></td>
<td><a href="http://www.unionsociety.co.uk">www.unionsociety.co.uk</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Library</td>
<td>0191 222 7662</td>
<td><a href="mailto:Lib-readerservices@ncl.ac.uk">Lib-readerservices@ncl.ac.uk</a></td>
<td><a href="http://www.ncl.ac.uk/library">www.ncl.ac.uk/library</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Or <a href="mailto:Lib-walton-rs@ncl.ac.uk">Lib-walton-rs@ncl.ac.uk</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>University Computing Service</td>
<td>0191 222 8039</td>
<td><a href="mailto:ISS.Reception@ncl.ac.uk">ISS.Reception@ncl.ac.uk</a></td>
<td><a href="http://www.ncl.ac.uk/iss/">www.ncl.ac.uk/iss/</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>University Safety Office</td>
<td>0191 222 6274</td>
<td><a href="mailto:Safety-Office@ncl.ac.uk">Safety-Office@ncl.ac.uk</a></td>
<td><a href="http://www.safety.ncl.ac.uk">www.safety.ncl.ac.uk</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiation Protection</td>
<td>Fax: 222 5219</td>
<td></td>
<td>(Separate sections for Radiation, and all other general safety services)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Financial Matters, Facilities and Services

It is important that supervisors and students are aware of regulations regarding payment of fees to the University and also of sources of financial help, should they ever be required.

There are many services available to staff and students in the University. Included here is a list of the main services, each with a description of what you can expect and how you access them. Some are essential in fulfilling your studies here, others pertain to leisure activities. You are recommended to spend some time making yourself aware of what is available should the need for further information arise.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Content</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tuition Fees</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Childcare Funding and Support</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Financial Support</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Council Tax</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Travel Insurance for Students</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disability Support Service</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Scholarships and Bursaries</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Library</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information Systems and Services (ISS)</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Careers Service</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Graduate Schools</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Student Advice Centre</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accommodation Office</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Student Counselling Service</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chaplaincy</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medical Matters</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Health and Safety</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Language Centre</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Students’ Union</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.N.C.L.E. University of Newcastle</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Children's Loan Equipment Scheme</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sport in the University</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Tuition Fees

Fees payable by postgraduate students are set out in the University Fees Schedule available from the Reception at 6 Kensington Terrace, from your Graduate School Office and on the University's website at www.ncl.ac.uk/calendar/fees/

Students who receive sponsorship should show a suitable letter from their sponsor to the representatives of the Finance Office at Registration to confirm that the sponsor will be paying the fees. Students who are wholly self-supporting are permitted to pay their fees in two instalments, the first instalment at Registration and the second at the end of January 2006. You can now pay online at www.onlinepayments.ncl.ac.uk. Alternatively, payment may be made by cheque, cash, direct debit or credit card. If you have any queries about your tuition fees, you should contact the Finance Office at 1 Park Terrace (telephone 0191 222 5520 or email: Tuition-Fees@ncl.ac.uk).

International Students may particularly like to note the following footnote of the Fees Schedule:

The following part-time overseas students pay the part-time fee at the home rate:
(a) candidates already registered on the programme of study concerned as part-time students before 1 September 1997;
(b) candidates repeating programmes which they have previously taken as full-time students;
(c) research degree candidates who have completed the normal minimum period of full-time study (three years’ full-time study for a PhD and one year’s full-time study for a Master’s degree) and for whom subsequent part-time registration is deemed to be appropriate, on academic grounds, by the Dean of Postgraduate Studies;
(d) research degree candidates whose terms of candidature stipulate that the research be conducted, in whole or in part, overseas;

Childcare Funding and Support

Services provided for all student parents include:

- Advice and information about childcare facilities and funding sources available;
- Assistance with the completion of applications for childcare funding;
- Support to student parents in respect of their specific concerns and needs.

The Childcare Support Officer deals with all applications for childcare funding from the University.

A range of financial support measures is available to assist student parents with the cost of childcare while studying. All childcare must comply with the requirements of the Children Act 1989. To be eligible for financial support for childcare fees, students must be registered at Newcastle University to study either full-time or part-time on a course of at least 50 per cent of full-time. Funding is not available to students on pre-sessional courses. Applications for financial support should be made in June or July prior to the beginning of the academic year in September. Applications are accepted throughout the academic year but there may be a waiting list for late applicants.

Financial support available for postgraduate students is in the form of subsidies paid direct to the childcare provider. All funding is discretionary and for one academic year only. Students may re-apply for the following year. There is no guarantee that funding will be made available to you in any one year.

A. International and EU students (Newcastle University Childcare Fund)

This Fund is available to undergraduate or postgraduate international and EU students. All childcare used must be registered under the Children Act 1989. The University expects international students to have made adequate financial provision for their stay in the UK, and this includes childcare. Financial assistance available is therefore limited and based on an assessment that includes:

(i) family income;
(ii) the level of childcare deemed appropriate in relation to the student’s study needs;
(iii) the availability of the student’s partner to care for the child/children;
(iv) the student’s status within the University (and that of their partner if relevant);
(v) available funding.


This funding is provided from government and is used at the University’s discretion to assist UK postgraduate students. To be eligible for Access to Learning Funds, PGCE students, like undergraduates, must have taken out the full student loan for which they have been assessed by their Local Education Authority (LEA) or the SAAS in Scotland. The childcare provision used should normally be registered, but consideration will be given to the costs of unregistered care that complies with the requirements of the Children Act 1989.
Funding Sources outside the University

- The Nursery Education Grant is available to international, EU and UK students. It is payable for children who have reached their third birthday and who attend a day nursery approved for the scheme. Local Education Authorities make payments direct to the day nursery, therefore reducing the cost to the parent: the day nursery will deal with this provision.
- A Child Tax Credit is available to UK parents and EU students with migrant worker status but not to international students with limited leave to remain.
- A Childcare element of the Working Tax Credit is available to UK students who are employed for 16 hours per week or more and use registered childcare. If the student has a partner, the partner must also be employed for more than sixteen hours per week. Applications should be made to the Inland Revenue.
- A Childcare Grant is available to some UK students undertaking PGCE or undergraduate courses and who are eligible for student funding from the LEA or SAAS.

For further information about childcare funding and childcare provision contact:
The Childcare Support Officer, Student Welfare Service.
Telephone: 0191 222 3599
Email: childcare@ncl.ac.uk

Financial Support

A. Access to Learning Funds (UK Students only)
Universities receive Access to Learning Funds (ALF) from the government each year so that they can provide selective help to students who have financial difficulties. There are certain conditions which have to be met by students to be eligible to apply.

Full-time and most part-time registered students studying at least 50% of full time are eligible to apply for Access to Learning Funds if they meet government residency rules. Details of the residency rules are provided on ALF application forms. Postgraduate applicants must be able to show that their financial hardship is unforeseen and not the result of having embarked on a course of study without sufficient funding to cover course fees and living costs.

Further details about Access to Learning Funds and how to apply are attached to the ALF application form. Information about funding for student parents is in the section on Childcare Funding above.

B. Financial Assistance Fund (International and EU Students only)
The University provides limited funds to help international students who are facing severe financial hardship. Awards from the Fund are made on a discretionary basis and any overseas student studying a degree programme at the University is eligible to apply. Applicants must be able to show that their financial difficulties have arisen through unforeseen and exceptional circumstances since it is a condition of registering for a programme of study at the University that students have ensured they have adequate funds to cover tuition fees and living expenses for their whole period of study. Students should not apply to the Fund until they have first explored other ways of supporting themselves.

C. Information and Applications
Further details about the various student financial support packages can be found on the University’s Welfare website at www.ncl.ac.uk/student-support. Applications are dealt with on a strictly confidential basis. Application forms for Access to Learning and Financial Assistance Funds will be available in late September from Reception, 6 Kensington Terrace, Newcastle University, and from the Student Advice Centre, First Floor, Union Society Building, King's Walk and should be returned to the Student Welfare Service, 6 Kensington Terrace.

Council Tax

The Council Tax (CT) is a tax based on notional property value. Each property is assessed by the local authority and assigned to a Valuation Band. A Council Tax bill for the amount relevant to that Band is then sent to that dwelling, unless the property is exempt.

Student halls of residence and University flats and, in Newcastle, private properties managed by the University, are exempt from Council Tax and students living in such accommodation will not receive Council Tax bills.

Full-time students living in non-University accommodation are normally exempted, unless they share their accommodation with non-students (including a spouse or partner) or part-time students. Such adult persons attract CT to the property and render the student occupiers liable too. They cannot claim CT exemption but may be able to claim Council Tax Benefit (CTB) covering up to the amount of the whole bill if they have low income or are receiving benefits. In the case of a spouse or partner, joint income is taken into account. Full-time students cannot claim CTB.

Non-British and non-EEA*-citizen spouses of non-EEA international students may have the students’ exemption extended to include them if the terms of their immigration leave to remain in the UK exclude them from working or claiming benefits.

If full-time students share with only one non-exempt person the bill attracts a discount of 25 per cent; if with two or more non-exempt persons, the CT is charged at 100 per cent.

Students living within the Newcastle City Council area can apply for exemption using an on-line form available at: www.newcastle.gov.uk.

Student Council Tax exemption certificates can be issued by the Graduate Schools or Reception at 6 Kensington Terrace. (If you need a CT exemption certificate, request one at least a week before your deadline, as it may take several days to produce the certificates during busy periods.)

*EEA = European Economic Area
Overseas Business Travel Insurance

The University provides overseas travel insurance without charge to postgraduate students on the business of Newcastle University. Full details of the procedure and cover are available at www.ncl.ac.uk/internal/finance/insurance/gradsummary.htm

For further details, contact:
Mrs Glenys Bailey, Finance Office, 1 Park Terrace.
Telephone 0191 222 6522; email: glenys.bailey@ncl.ac.uk
www.ncl.ac.uk/internal/finance/insurance/insurancedept.htm

Disability Support Service - Support for Disabled Students

Robinson Library
Telephone: 0191 222 7623
Email: disability.support@ncl.ac.uk
www.ncl.ac.uk/disability.services/

The University is committed to developing an environment in which disabled students can pursue their intellectual and personal development with appropriate University and School support services.

Provision For Disabled Students

Disability Support is part of the Student Welfare Service at the University. It offers advice, guidance and support for students with disabilities and specific learning difficulties (Dyslexia). The Disability team comprises of Head of Service, a Sensory Support Adviser, three Disability Advisers and two Dyslexia Advisers. Disability Support has an assessment centre (JUNAC) which assesses students needs for Disabled Students Allowance purposes. Disability Support also operates a Support Worker Service and will arrange this if required. It is important to contact Disability Support to arrange any alternative examination arrangements or extra exam time.

Disability Support also provides advice and guidance to all university staff to promote effective disability awareness and to ensure courses are accessible to students with disabilities.

The government provides funds for disabled students through the Disabled Students’ Allowance to assist students who, because of their disability, incur extra costs. Advice and help on all aspects of claiming Disabled Students’ Allowance can be obtained from the Disability Support Service. Further details are available in the Department for Education booklet entitled Bridging the Gap obtainable from your Local Education Authority.

Dyslexia

Students with dyslexia must submit a copy of their most recent psychological report to Disability Support by no later than 1 November for semester one and by 18 April for semester two to qualify for additional time in examinations. Disability Support will then arrange additional time with the Examinations Office based on the recommendations made in the psychological report. If you think you have dyslexia but have not been assessed you should contact a member of the Dyslexia Support Team to discuss screening assessment. Further information about the support available for students with dyslexia can be obtained from Disability Support, Robinson Library. Tel: 0191 222 7623, email Disability.Support@ncl.ac.uk

Funding for Disabled Students:

Disabled Students’ Allowance (DSA)

You may have extra study costs because of your disability. These may include extra travel costs, a need for specialist equipment such as voice recognition software or personal assistance such as a note-taker or interpreter.

If you gain research council funding you can get Disabled Students’ Allowance as part of the council’s award package. You should contact the provider of your bursary or award for advice on any extra support you may be entitled to because of your disability.

If you are a student from Scotland or Northern Ireland, you can get DSA if you get a studentship or bursary.

DSAs are now available for open and distance learning courses in postgraduate study. Students from England and Wales should contact their LEA for an application form.

Starting from the academic year 2000-01, postgraduate students from England and Wales can obtain DSAs to support disability-related costs on their course. The allowances are non-means tested. There is one allowance to meet all costs (specialist equipment, non-medical help, general expenditure and travel) of up to £5,780 a year for both full-time and part-time postgraduate students. If you begin your postgraduate course straight after an undergraduate course, any specialist equipment that has already been given to you may be taken into account. However, if it no longer meets your needs it can be upgraded or replaced. Students doing more than one part-time course at the same time can only apply for one DSA. There is no age limit.

Course criteria:

- A designated course such as research and taught masters, doctorates, diplomas and certificates.
- It would normally require a first degree or equivalent before entry.
- It should be a minimum one year in length.
- The course can be either full-time or part-time.
- If part-time, the course should be at least 50 per cent of the full-time course equivalent. That is, it should take no more than twice the time to complete than a full-time course.

If you are a postgraduate student, you should ask your LEA to send you the DSA application form for postgraduate students.

You can also download this from the following website at www.dfes.gov.uk/studentsupport/formsandguides/index.shtml or from the Student Finance Direct website at www.studentfinancedirect.co.uk

Students/courses not eligible for DSA:
- Students receiving DSA via research councils or similar bodies.

If you are fortunate enough to get statutory funding you may also have any disability-related costs paid for. The contact list of funding bodies explains the disability-related funding available from each body.

For help or advice on applying for Disabled Students' Allowance contact Disability Support - telephone 222 7623 or email disability.support@ncl.ac.uk

Hardship Funds

If you are not eligible for statutory funding, but face extra costs because of your disability you may be eligible to apply to the Access to Learning Fund administered by the University. Further details are in the Financial Support section above.

Research Council and other Public Funding

You can get government funded research grants, studentships or fellowships for some postgraduate courses, but they are mostly for postgraduate research. The awards mainly come from research councils that cover an area of study. For example, the Economic and Social Research Council (ESRC) has responsibility for the social sciences and the Arts and Humanities Research Council (AHRC) oversees the humanities and certain professional and vocational subjects. Most taught postgraduate courses do not attract research council funding. Universities and colleges will know if any of their courses attract bursaries. The research councils publish a list of the academic departments/schools they have approved for funding each year, which you can find at your university careers service.

Not all postgraduate courses attract studentships and not all students on those that do will be eligible to receive one. All research council funding except some ESRC awards are given through university schools, so apply for these awards through the school where you want to study.

Only one research council (if any) will fund the course you are interested in, so only apply to the relevant one. Contact the funding bodies listed below or for further information about the type of courses they fund, the nature of their studentships, and how to apply for them.

The details below also have information about each research council's Disabled Students' Allowances. These allowances are not the same as the Postgraduate Disabled Students' Allowances available from LEAs (explained above). If you gain research council funding you can obtain Disabled Students' Allowances from the research council only.

For further information contact Disability Support.

International Scholarships, Bursaries and Discounts

The University offers a large number of scholarships, bursaries and discounts – these are:
- Newcastle International Postgraduate Scholarships (NIPS)
- Alumni Tuition Fee Discount
- International Family Discounts (IFD)
- Overseas Research Students Awards Scheme (ORS)
- Dorothy Hodgkin Postgraduate Awards (DHPAs)

Full details are available at:
www.ncl.ac.uk/postgraduate/international/intfinance.phtml

With the exception of the ORS Awards, which are open to international students in the first year of their research studies, all of the above awards are only available to prospective students whilst they are applying to the University and are offered during the admissions process at registration. As such, students holding these awards should have received confirmation from the University prior to the start of their studies.

Students who have a query about their award should contact:

International Scholarships Officer
Student Welfare Service (Financial Support Team)
6 Kensington Terrace
Newcastle upon Tyne, NE1 7RU
Telephone: +44 191 222 5537 / 5538 / 5742
Fax: +44 191 222 6139
Email: international-scholarships@ncl.ac.uk

Faculties/schools may occasionally offer other studentships and bursaries – please refer to your faculty or school section in this Handbook, if appropriate.
The Library

Workshops
During 2006-07 the Library will be running a series of workshops as part of your postgraduate training programme. Topics include; constructing effective research strategies, using databases and e-journals, using primary literature and archives, searching the web beyond Google Scholar, staying at the cutting edge of new research and using EndNote. The workshops are designed to save you time and make your research more effective, so do try to come to as many as you can.

ResIN – Research Information at Newcastle
www.ncl.ac.uk/library/resin

ResIN is a set of dedicated web pages designed for researchers at Newcastle. Use it to discover how to find information in a wide variety of resources, from grey literature to statistical data, primary sources to official documents. You will also find advice on keeping up to date with new publications and how to manage your references using EndNote. ‘Writing Up’ includes sections on thesis production, publication, academic integrity and citation, while ‘Hot Topics’ highlights major issues such as the scholarly communication debate and the University’s Institutional Repository and E-Prints pilot.

Every time you access ResIN, ‘What’s New’ will alert you to new resources and developments and ‘Spotlight’ will also point you to key areas of the site.

Liaison Librarians
Your Liaison Librarian is here to help you make best use of the services and resources provided by the Library. Come and discuss your research with us.

- Humanities and Social Sciences
  Kasia.Drozdiak@ncl.ac.uk, ext.7656 (until 8/12/06)
  Linda.Kelly@ncl.ac.uk, ext 7667
  Pete.Maggs@ncl.ac.uk, ext. 7665
  Jessica.Plane@ncl.ac.uk,  ext. 7656 (from 9/12/06)

- Science, Agriculture and Engineering
  Moira.Bent@ncl.ac.uk, ext. 7641 (from 9/12/06)
  Jenny.Campbell@ncl.ac.uk, ext. 7640
  Jessica.Plane@ncl.ac.uk, ext. 7641 (until 8/12/06)
  Cliff Spencer, email c.spencer@ncl.ac.uk, ext 3425

- Medicine, Dentistry and Biosciences
  Walton Library, Medical School
  erika.gwynnett@ncl.ac.uk, ext 7792

- Special Collections and Archives
  Melanie Wood, email: melanie.wood@ncl.ac.uk, ext 7671

Information Systems and Services (ISS)

ISS provides computer services for all students via cluster rooms which are located throughout the University. There are currently over 1400 PCs in 44 clusters. However, most postgraduate research students have access to personal or shared PCs in their own place of work: such PCs will usually be running the University Common Desktop, and will therefore have the same software and facilities as Cluster Room PCs.

The Common Desktop ensures integrated, secure access to central filestore, e-mail, print servers, and similar services. Running under Windows XP, a wide range of software is supplied to assist in teaching, research, and for personal development.

The Common Desktop service means that you can login at any PC in the clusters, lecture theatres, etc, and you will be using your “own” PC configuration, as defined on your office PC.

For students with their own laptop, docking stations are available in the main Cluster Rooms, and wireless access now covers over 50% of the central campus. A Citrix Remote Application Service (RAS) makes available to such private users most of the facilities found on the University Common Desktop.

In some clusters staffed Help Desks offer support, and there is also a phone (5999) and email Helpline (helpline@ncl.ac.uk), if you experience difficulties elsewhere.

As one of the primary sites for the UK’s academic SuperJANET network, this University has always had exceptionally good network connections.

The many services of ISS are described in documents which are available in the Cluster Rooms, and also on the web pages at www.ncl.ac.uk/iss/.
Careers Service

2nd Floor, Armstrong Building
Tel: 0191 222 7748
www.careers.ncl.ac.uk
Opening Times (including vacations)
Monday - Thursday 10:00am to 5:00pm
Friday 10:00am to 4:45pm

Thinking ahead?
The nature and demands of research means that it can be easy to neglect your personal priorities and difficult to find time to think about and plan your next steps. Adopting a proactive approach to your personal and career development from the start will help to ensure that you make the most of what Newcastle University can offer and improve your chances of securing work that meets, or even exceeds, your expectations. Whatever your motivation for starting a research degree and your current thinking, the Careers Service provides independent information and guidance through a range of different approaches and services.

Careers information resources
The Careers Service holds an extensive range of paper and web based materials covering career choice, occupations, employers and finding and applying for jobs worldwide. There are several resources and reference materials designed to meet the needs of postgraduate researchers, whether you intend to pursue a career within or beyond academia and research. Staff are available during opening hours, to help you find and make the most of all of these resources.

The Careers Service website offers a comprehensive careers reference site which includes dedicated postgraduate pages, details of events, appointment booking facilities and links to career-related sites for postgraduate researchers, see www.careers.ncl.ac.uk.

‘Graduate Connections’ is a database of graduate career profiles which provide first hand information about what it is like to work within certain job sectors and organisations. You can read the profiles online and contact graduates by email for further advice and information, see www.careers.ncl.ac.uk/connections.

Individual advice & guidance
Careers advisers are available without an appointment for short consultations 11am - 5pm, Monday to Friday. We offer advice and guidance on all aspects of your career from recognizing what you can offer, researching and assessing your options, applying for jobs and preparing for interviews. We also offer individual feedback on CVs and application forms. In some cases, a longer guidance interview may be recommended.

Careers Sessions
Careers advisers deliver dedicated career management sessions for research students in each Graduate School. Full details of the current programme can be found in your faculty postgraduate training and development programme. Contact your Graduate School or one of the following careers advisers for further information:

- Humanities and Social Sciences
  Rachael.Roberts@ncl.ac.uk
- Medical Sciences
  Rachelle.Pereira, R.A.Pereira@ncl.ac.uk
- Science, Agriculture & Engineering
  Karen Parkhouse, K.A.Parkhouse@ncl.ac.uk

Throughout the academic year, we deliver sessions on marketing your skills and finding and applying for opportunities. Sessions include writing CVs and application forms, preparing for interviews and assessment centres, practice aptitude tests and advice on working in the UK for international students. These are open to all students. For full details, collect a copy of our wallplanner from the Careers Service or see www.careers.ncl.ac.uk.

Access to employers
We work closely with a wide range of regional, national and international organisations who target Newcastle University graduates. Each year, we provide an extensive programme of recruitment and information events for employers to visit Newcastle to promote their graduate opportunities and support your career planning. These events offer an opportunity for you to talk informally to employers and recent graduates working in a variety of functions and gain a real insight into their work, environment and the application process.

Employer presentations and graduate recruitment fairs run throughout the year. In particular, look out for JOBFEST and AIESEC in semester 1 and Newcastle Graduate Recruitment Fair in June. To receive regular email notification of relevant events on and off campus, register your career interests at www.careers.ncl.ac.uk.

Finding a job
‘Vacancies Online’ is a database of graduate job vacancies, work experience and voluntary positions with organisations that target Newcastle graduates. About 100 new vacancies are added to the database each week. You can search for opportunities at any time but to receive email alerts of relevant opportunities register at www.careers.ncl.ac.uk/vacancies.

Our website provides comprehensive links to further sources of vacancies including specialist directories, newspapers and journals. Your academic and professional contacts may also be a useful source of information and advice.

Starting your own business
The Careers Service Enterprise Team focuses on developing and applying enterprise skills through a programme of workshops, and facilitates new business creation. If you are considering starting a business using either knowledge and skills developed through your research or other ideas you have, provides advice and can link you to various business support services. You can have access to a workstation including PC, telephone, storage and further resources. For more information about Enterprise see www.careers.ncl.ac.uk.

Help after graduation
You can register with the Careers Service for continued access to all services and resources for up to two years following graduation. For further information see www.careers.ncl.ac.uk.

Using our services
Please let us know if you need any materials in alternative formats or require any other reasonable adjustments to access our events or resources.
Graduate Schools

The Student Progress Service is the part of the Academic Registrar's Office whose work is directly concerned with students, from first arrival to graduation. Student Progress staff and other staff who support postgraduate students are located within three graduate school offices, one for each Faculty.

Examples of the issues that the graduate schools deal with are:
- Admissions;
- Student Registration;
- Student Progress (including MPhil/PhD upgrades, confirmation of candidature, suspension of study, extensions to thesis submission dates, academic concessions, appointment of examiners, dealing with thesis submissions and examiners' reports, pass lists);
- Research Students’ annual progression;
- Training programmes for research students;
- Advice on University and programme regulations;
- Complaints, academic appeals, student discipline, assessment irregularities;

The Congregations Office, which organizes all degree ceremonies and issues degree parchments, is also part of the Student Progress Service.

The graduate school contact details are shown on page 9 of the Introduction (Part One). If you are unsure which Graduate School to contact, please telephone (0191) 222 6587 or email Student-Progress@ncl.ac.uk.

Student Advice Centre

The Student Advice Centre (or the SAC as it is most commonly referred to) is a free, confidential and professional service of the Union Society. The SAC offers information, advice, assistance and representation should you need it on a wide range of issues including:

- **Financial:** Grants, fees, loans, taxes, debt, banking matters, benefits and tax credits;
- **Legal:** Criminal and civil matters, compensation claims, insurance, consumer matters;
- **Housing:** Checking of contracts, disputes with landlords/tenants, repairs, deposit refunds eviction, re-housing;
- **Academic:** Changes of course, appeals, concessions, complaints;
- **Personal/family:** Sickness, disability issues, harassment;
- **Health:** Sexual health issues, drug related problems, help with health costs;
- **Employment:** Advice on employment rights and tax;
- **Disciplinary:** Advice on sanctions imposed by the University and / or Union Society;
- **International Student issues:** Including immigration issues and rights, information on visa renewal and all welfare matters.

This is only a brief outline of how the SAC works. Their aim is to help you to make the best of your situation, no matter what your problem may be. The SAC remains independent of the University and anything you say to the staff is treated with the strictest confidence.

The SAC is located on the first floor of the Union. The Centre is open all year around. Office hours are Monday to Friday, 10.00 am to 4.00 pm (closed all day on Wednesday). Opening times are 11am – 3pm during vacations (closed all day on Wednesday).

Please contact our Reception desk for information, or to make an appointment with an Adviser for more complex issues. Appointments cannot be made via email. Our contact details are: telephone 0191 239 3979 (external direct) and 5424 ext 1079 (from within the University) or fax 0191 239 3986.

Accommodation Office

The Accommodation Office is here to help you!

**University Accommodation**
If you have a query regarding your University accommodation, you should contact a member of staff in the University Allocations Team: Lynn Renwick, Lisa Barron, Amanda Hill, Sarah Morales or Kirsten Reilly.

If you require information about individual sites, you should contact the Accommodation Office for a copy of the Student Accommodation 2006-2007 brochure, or refer to the University website at: www.ncl.ac.uk/accommodation/

**Ending Your Tenancy**
If you take up a place in University accommodation, you will be provided with a tenancy agreement until the end of the academic year (the minimum agreement is from 24 September 2006 until 16 June 2007). You may apply to extend your stay until the end of August 2007 if you wish to do so. However, there is no guarantee that you will be offered the same room and/or site. All tenancies are terminated normally only in the event of the tenant ceasing to be a registered student of Newcastle University. If you withdraw from University or fail to register you will still be required to pay the full rent due for the termly billing period in which you leave, that is, 06/1/2007, 21/4/2007 or 16/6/2007. Those who leave University accommodation for non-University accommodation remain responsible for the rent until the end of the tenancy agreement or until the room is re-let to another student who is not, at that time, paying rent to the University.

If you are a Postgraduate research student i.e. studying towards a PhD or MPhil, you can give 28 days formal notice to end the tenancy early prior to the end of your period of registered study at Newcastle or if you intend to leave the University for research purposes, and the liability to pay rent terminates after the 28 day notice period. You must provide an official letter of support from your school before the notice can be accepted.
Changing Your Accommodation
If you find your accommodation unsatisfactory in some way you may apply for a transfer to more suitable University accommodation. If you are living in self-catered accommodation and wish to change your room at any time, you should contact the Accommodation Office which will assist you as much as possible with your request. A fee of £2.50 will be charged for second and subsequent moves in all University accommodation. Applications to move from catered to self-catered accommodation should be made at the hall at which you are living and will only be accepted within the first six weeks of a tenancy and will incur a further charge of £200.

University Accommodation After Your First Year
With expanding student numbers we usually need all of our accommodation for the new intake of students each academic year. Therefore we cannot guarantee that it will be possible to offer you a room in University accommodation beyond your first year. Information on availability of accommodation for continuing students will be available in January 2006.

Summer Rent
If you are offered accommodation for a second or subsequent year in self-catered accommodation, your tenancy agreement will start in June 2005 and end in June 2006. You will be required to pay rent for every day of the tenancy agreement, which includes the summer period. This means you may stay in your accommodation over the summer vacation and keep your belongings in your accommodation during this time.

Private Sector
If you have a query regarding private accommodation, including the property management service, you should contact a member of staff in the Private Sector Team: Pamela Bonner, Alison Clemett, Alec Hughes or Grant Jackson. This team provides services for students who are searching for, or currently living in private rented accommodation. Most second and third year undergraduate students live in privately rented accommodation, sharing houses and flats in various areas of the city. New students who do not wish to live in a University residence are advised to consult the Accommodation Office to obtain details of lodgings, flats and houses. Vacant properties are advertised for whole groups/couples/families via the private sector lists but individual rooms can also be found on our shareboard. The Accommodation Office is happy to offer advice and to look at tenancy agreements prior to students signing. Students who need external accommodation should spend some time in Newcastle during the summer vacation to familiarize themselves with the different residential areas and view several properties before making a decision. Most private sector tenancies are for a 52 week period.

University Property Management Service
The University operates a Property Management Service whereby privately owned houses are leased from owners and then rented to groups of students or student families. All properties within the Service meet the Accreditation Scheme standards and are at rent levels that fall within the normal student budget. The Service can offer one to seven -bedroom accommodation in many areas of the city. This Service is very popular with continuing students who decide to share with groups of friends. New properties are taken on each year and the Accommodation Office will try to match student-housing requirements to available existing property. Please contact us directly for more information.

Flats, Houses and Bedsits
We recommend any student looking for this type of accommodation to use the services of the Accommodation Office. Details of owners and properties are available on-line or from Accommodation Office staff who can provide advice on rent levels and tenancies. All advertised vacancies meet the standards required by Newcastle’s Accreditation Scheme. This Scheme is a joint venture involving amongst others, the city’s universities and colleges, the student unions, the City Council and the local police. It aims to provide progressive improvements in the standard and safety of private accommodation available to students in Newcastle. It covers gas, electrical and fire safety as well as security and amenity standards. It is strongly recommended that you use the private sector property search at www.ncl.ac.uk/accommodation to ensure that property meets accreditation standards.

Lodgings
The Accommodation Office has an established list of householders offering lodgings. They offer catered or self-catered options. Although not usually popular as long-term accommodation, lodgings are very useful for people waiting for their preferred type of accommodation to become available. A separate list of lodging is maintained for those undergraduate students who are unable to obtain University accommodation at the start of term. These students are offered suitable University accommodation as quickly as possible following the start of term.

Find a flatmate Scheme
The Accommodation Office has developed a ‘Find a flatmate’ scheme to assist students who are looking for accommodation on their own. By registering to be part of this Scheme, we can put you in touch with other students to form a group to find suitable privately rented accommodation more easily.

To register, email the Accommodation Office at accommodation-enquiries@ncl.ac.uk.

Opening Hours
The Accommodation Office is open from 9.00am to 4.30pm Monday to Friday.
Telephone: 0191 222 6360; fax: 0191 222 6313; email: accommodation-enquiries@ncl.ac.uk.
The Chaplaincy is both a place and a team of people. We are a team of Chaplains from different churches, and work closely together with representatives of other world faiths. We welcome people of all faiths or none, and are here for you when you want to talk, to pray, or simply to have some questions, your hopes, your dreams, and are here for you all students and staff. We are a resource for you, for your questions, your hopes, your dreams, and are here for you when you want to talk, to pray, or simply to have some space. Through all that we do, spirituality, prayer, counselling, teaching, and different activities and programmes, we seek to put faith into action and enrich the University community with the story of God.

Chaplaincy

The Chaplaincy building is at the heart of the campus, just across the car park from the Uni. The Chaplaincy is around each day. Our notice-board and website have details of the weekly activities and events. The Chaplaincy is open every day during term time between 9.00 am and 5.00 pm and a Chaplain is around each day. An appointment is usually offered within 3 to 4 days, but often less. You can let us know how urgent things are when you get in touch.

Students come to discuss any personal and emotional problems. These concerns may be about self, family or friends or relationships. They may involve current situations or problems from the past that continue to affect them. However, it really is OK to talk about anything.

The Student Welfare Service Staff adhere to a Strict Code for Ethical Practice. Information is not shared with anyone else usually. The rare exception to this would occur in situations where the student or someone else might be considered to be at serious risk.

Counselling and Wellbeing also offers training to tutors and a support group is available to assist with the pastoral aspects of their tutor role. The office is open 9.00am to 5.00pm weekdays, all year round, with some later appointments available. Appointments can be made by calling into the office, by telephone or email. There is an answer-phone service when staffs are unavailable.

Chaplaincy – the place and the people – is here for you. The Chaplaincy’s web page can be found at: www.ncl.ac.uk/chaplaincy or you can call us on 0191 222 6341.

YOUR CHAPLAINS ARE:

Anglican
Rev. Mark Vasey-Saunders
telephone: 0191 222 6341 ( work )
or 0191 239 9775 ( home )
email: mark.vasey-saunders@ncl.ac.uk

Baptist
Rev. Paul Merton
telephone: 0191 274 2556 ( work )
or 0191 272 0647 ( home )
email: paul.merton@ncl.ac.uk

Catholic
Rev. Andrew Downie and Miss Mia Fox
telephone: 0191 222 8596
or 0191 239 9527 (Andrew), 281 1053 (Mia)
email: andrew.downie@ncl.ac.uk, mia.fox@ncl.ac.uk

Methodist
Rev. Rob Hawkins
telephone: 0191 281 2309
e-mail: rob.hawkins@ncl.ac.uk

United Reformed Church
Rev Nigel Watson
telephone: 0191 281 5006 ( home )
or 0191 281 4676 ( work )
email: n.g.watson@ncl.ac.uk

Salvation Army
Major Heather Yates
telephone: 07952 275 673 (mobile)
email: heather.yates@ncl.ac.uk

Lay and Honorary Chaplains:
Prof Bill Clegg
Telephone: 0191 222 6649
e-mail: W.Clegg@ncl.ac.uk

Mr Rob Davidson
0191 222 6203
e-mail: r.i.davidson@ncl.ac.uk

Dr David Golding
Telephone: 07817 637 746 (mobile)
email: D.W.Golding@ncl.ac.uk

Dr Pauline Pearson
Telephone: 0191 245 4209
e-mail: p.h.pearson@ncl.ac.uk

Rev Bryan Vernon
Telephone: 0191 222 8945
e-mail: b.g.vernon@ncl.ac.uk

Mrs Sue Vernon
Telephone: 21-43064
e-mail: S.J.Vernon@ncl.ac.uk

World Faith Chaplains:
Jewish Orthodox
Rabbi David Cohen
telephone: 0141 577 8246
e-mail: dcoh@arts.gla.ac.uk

Jewish Reform
Rabbi Ian Morris
telephone: 0113 266 5256
e-mail: MorrisLeeds@compuserve.com

Buddhist
Rev. Sujatin Johnson
e-mail: sujatin@amidatrust.com

The University Mosque is in the King George VI Building,
Telephone: 0191 232 6889.
Contact details for other faiths can be found on the chaplaincy website.
Medical Matters

Medical care
Students are required by the University Regulations to register with a medical practice. There are many NHS medical practices in Newcastle, the names and addresses of which are available from Newcastle Health Authority. Names and addresses of practices in other areas of Tyne and Wear, Durham and Northumberland can be obtained from the local health authority for that area.

Before registering with any medical practice, students are advised to ensure that the practice will carry out home visits to their addresses. A list of medical practices in the areas most commonly lived in by Newcastle students is given in the Appendix of The Student Guide.

In addition, the University has made arrangements for a range of local practices to attend Registration this year. The practices will be based at the ‘Well Fayre’ in the Kings Road Centre on the Monday to Wednesday of Registration week and you are strongly encouraged to visit the ‘Well Fayre’ to register with a local GP, if you have not already done so.

Dental care
It is advisable for students to register with a dental practice. There are many NHS dental practices in Newcastle, the names and addresses of which are available from the Newcastle Health Authority.

An independent dental practice, the King’s Walk Dental Practice, is situated at the city end of Claremont Road (entrance from the Playhouse car park). It is open from 9am to 7pm on Mondays and Tuesdays, 9am to 5pm on Wednesdays and Fridays, 9am to 6pm on Thursdays. It offers a full NHS service to students and NHS and private services to members and staff and the general public. All students under 19 years of age are automatically exempt from charges. Other students can collect application forms for exemption certificates (HC1) from the practice in advance of their appointment in order to avoid charges.

To make an appointment, telephone 0191 222 0725 or 0191 222 6000 ext. 6283, fax 0191 222 0725 or call in person and speak to the dental receptionist.

Procedure in the case of illness
The following advice applies to most students in the University. Students on some programmes of study (e.g. medical and dental students) may be required to follow slightly different rules about notifying relevant staff of illness, and will be provided with the necessary information by their schools or faculties.

If illness prevents you from studying at any time whilst you are a student at the University, you should inform your tutor or supervisor immediately. If you are absent from the University through illness for more than three working days, you must obtain a Self-Certification of Illness form from your tutor/supervisor or school office or from the University’s website at www.ncl.ac.uk/spo and return the completed form to your tutor/supervisor as soon as you are able to return to your studies. If illness prevents you from studying for more than seven working days, you must obtain a medical certificate from your GP and forward it to your tutor/supervisor as soon as possible. It is also advisable, if you have to miss examinations as a result of illness, that you see your GP whilst you are ill and obtain a medical certificate as evidence of the illness.

In cases where you believe that illness has affected your academic performance, for example in examinations, you should inform your tutor/supervisor (or degree programme director if the former are unavailable) of the circumstances. In such cases, in addition to providing a Self Certification of Illness form or medical certificate from your GP, you should also fill in the Personal Circumstances Affecting Performance (PCAP) form available at www.ncl.ac.uk/spo. If you are unsure at any stage about the possible consequences of illness on your academic progress, you should consult your tutor/supervisor for advice.

Occupational health
The University has an Occupational Health Practitioner to provide basic occupational health services. As this is a new service the full details of the service are still being developed so you are recommended to look at the website for up to date information through the year. See www.ncl.ac.uk/occupationalhealth/

For some programmes of study involving biological practical work, health surveillance or immunization may be required. Health surveillance may be necessary by virtue of:
- The risks arising from the micro-organisms used in the project;
- The risks arising from the medical condition of the individual;
- Allergy risks arising out of the project (e.g. work with animals).

The details of the arrangements for identifying and reporting a need for health surveillance and/or immunization may be found in the University publication Safe Working with Biological Hazards, which may also be found on the University Safety Office website.

Health and Safety
www.ncl.ac.uk/internal/safety
Every year University students are injured, and most years there are fatalities in the education sector. Almost all of these incidents are readily avoidable without preventing activities being undertaken. On rare occasions activities are stopped because they generate excessive risks and so cannot be permitted to continue without substantial additional controls being put in place.

Policy and law
The University Safety Policy, with considerable amounts of guidance, is on the University Safety Office website at www.ncl.ac.uk/internal/safety. Further guidance and local rules can be obtained from School Safety Officers, or from the University Safety Office. Every school has a School Safety Policy, and some labs also have specific local rules.

It is a legal duty on the University, its staff and students, to ensure that the University is a safe place. It is therefore important that everybody complies with the local rules and reports all incidents, defects etc. to the School Safety Officer or University Safety Office. If problems are not reported they may result in others being injured. There is also an on-line reporting form for Accidents, Incidents and Near Misses at www.ncl.ac.uk/internal/safety/acc-form.html.

Risk assessment and training
University safety is driven by Risk Assessment. There are courses on undertaking Risk Assessments which all postgraduate students are entitled to attend. Specific local rules have been developed as a result of Risk Assessment and legal requirements. All research students are required to consider their own safety and the safety of others in...
their work (including the cleaners and visitors). Research students will be accepted for places on many of the University Safety Office training courses. The list of courses available is on line at www.ncl.ac.uk/internal/safety/training-courses.html.

Prior to undertaking work with some high risk chemicals, training on the specific risks may be required. In particular work with cyanides, phenol and carcinogens will require a clear understanding of the risks and the local rules for minimizing those risks.

Fire
The University has strict rules on Fire Evacuation - including drills and rules on keeping doors closed and corridors clear. In late 2003 there was a fire at the University costing over £2M, which also had the potential to have killed people in the building. The University is a safe place with very few fires but these rules must be complied with at all times to keep your working environment safe. Penalties for breaches of fire rules ultimately include expulsion from the University for the most serious offences. The Fire Brigade has a policy of prosecuting students for serious offences. Further information and training is available from the University Safety Office - including training courses on the use of Fire Extinguishers (a legitimate chance to let one off!).

Radiation protection
Work with ionizing radiation is also strictly controlled and every school using radiation for research work will have a Radiation Protection Supervisor. Nobody is permitted to use radiation until they have been approved by the University Radiation Protection Officer which will involve a Newcastle course being undertaken (experience from other Universities will help, but the Newcastle Course is required for even the most experienced users). This is to ensure that people are aware of the Newcastle local rules as well as being suitably competent to be permitted to work with sources. There is further information on the radiation issues for Newcastle from the University Safety Office website.

The website
The University Safety Office is generating a new service website over the next few months and much of it will be "live" by the time you are reading this document. This service will enable you to register on the site and get access to more information than is available externally. If you have specific interests please let us know when you register as we may be able to provide you with additional services (such as access to mailbases etc.). Please be patient over the next year as the further development of this service will take time. If you have any suggestions for further services please let us know.

Language Centre
The Language Centre at Newcastle University provides opportunities and support for language learning for all members of the University.

English
Before Registration, all students whose first language is not English must take a test in English, (separate information on the test can be found in the Pre-Arrival Information booklet sent to new students.) Advice is then given to you and your tutor on any problems revealed by the test and a recommendation made about what you can do to improve. You may be advised, for example, to attend some of our classes in academic reading and writing, listening, speaking and seminar skills or grammar and pronunciation, which run throughout term time. These classes are free of charge to registered students. In addition, the Language Centre holds surgeries throughout the year to help with more specific, individual problems. The Language Centre also runs intensive, fee-paying courses in preparation for University study throughout the academic year, as well as an English Language Summer School.

Languages as part of your degree
If you are an overseas student whose first language is not English, it may be possible for you to take some modules of English language training as part of your degree. Please check carefully with your tutor that your degree programme regulations allow you to take these courses.

Languages in your own time
Even if you cannot study a language as part of your degree, we can still help you.

Open Access Centre: Our Open Access Centre is fully equipped with video, satellite TV and computers for the independent study of almost 50 languages. Advisers are on duty to help with independent language learning. Membership is free to current students of this University. You need to show your smart card to register to use the facilities. Access is then through turnstiles activated by your smart card.

How to find us
Course/General Enquiries: Language Centre Reception, Level 4, Old Library Building; email: language.centre@ncl.ac.uk; Telephone: 0191 222 7535; fax: 0191 222 5239:
Monday to Thursday 9.00 am to 4.45 pm
Friday 9.00 am to 4.30 pm.

Open Access Centre: Level 2, Old Library Building (entrance opposite the Armstrong Building); email: open.access@ncl.ac.uk; Telephone: 0191 222 7490
Term time: Monday to Thursday 9.00 am to 8.00 pm
Friday 9.00 am to 5.00 pm
Vacations: Monday to Friday 9.00 am to 5.00 pm.
For detailed information on all aspects of our work check our website at www.ncl.ac.uk/langcen.
Students Union

Students Union officers

The Union Society is run by more than 25 student officers who are elected each year by a cross-campus ballot in which all members (students) can vote. The officers can offer advice and support on a range of issues and represent every sector of the student community.

Full-time Sabbatical Officers:

President: 0191 239 3916
email: president.union@ncl.ac.uk

Vice-President Student Support: 0191 239 3917
email: support.union@ncl.ac.uk

Vice-President Democracy and Training: 0191 239 3963
email: democracy.union@ncl.ac.uk

Vice-President Activities: 0191 239 3964
email: activities.union@ncl.ac.uk

Athletic Union President: 0191 239 3923
email: au.union@ncl.ac.uk

Charities Officer: 0191 239 3920
email: rag@ncl.ac.uk

Campaigns Officer: 0191 239 3918
email: campaigns.union@ncl.ac.uk

Convenor of Disciplinary Committee: 0191 239 3902
email: disc.union@ncl.ac.uk

Union Chairperson: 0191 239 3902
email: chair.union@ncl.ac.uk

Convenor of Debates: 0191 239 3902
email: debates.union@ncl.ac.uk

Ethics and Environment Officer: 0191 239 3918
email: environment.union@ncl.ac.uk

Executive Officers without Portfolio: 0191 239 3918
email: exec.union@ncl.ac.uk

Freshers’ Week Organisers: 0191 239 3920
email: freshers.week@ncl.ac.uk

Editor of the Student Newspaper and Pulp magazine: 0191 239 3940, email: editor.union@ncl.ac.uk

There are various part-time officers:

Students with Disabilities Officer: 0191 239 3918
email: swd.union@ncl.ac.uk

International Students Officer: 0191 239 3917
email: international.union@ncl.ac.uk

Lesbian, Gay, Bisexual and Trans (LGBT) Officer: 0191 239 3918
email: lgb.union@ncl.ac.uk

Anti-Racism Officer: 0191 239 3918
email: ar.union@ncl.ac.uk

Postgraduate and Mature Students (PGMS) Officer: 0191 239 3918
email: pgms.union@ncl.ac.uk

Charities Officer: 0191 239 3920
email: rag@ncl.ac.uk

Campaigns Officer: 0191 239 3918
email: campaigns.union@ncl.ac.uk

Convenor of Disciplinary Committee: 0191 239 3902
email: disc.union@ncl.ac.uk

Union Chairperson: 0191 239 3902
email: chair.union@ncl.ac.uk

Convenor of Debates: 0191 239 3902
email: debates.union@ncl.ac.uk

Ethics and Environment Officer: 0191 239 3918
email: environment.union@ncl.ac.uk

Executive Officers without Portfolio: 0191 239 3918
email: exec.union@ncl.ac.uk

Freshers’ Week Organisers: 0191 239 3920
email: freshers.week@ncl.ac.uk

Union Society Reception: 0191 239 3900

Students’ Union Services

The Union Society of Newcastle University is one of the few student unions in the country to own its building. This has distinct advantages, not least the fact that it gives the management team more discretion to implement services generally wanted by the student membership.

There are a variety of food and bar outlets within the building providing Fair-trade drinks as well as salads, sandwiches, pizzas, burgers etc. The Union offers one of the largest and best value selections of food and drink in the city and can cater for all dietary requirements. The Union also operates Campus Coffee (100% fair-trade) and a popular café at the Robinson Library.

The Union hosts a full range of entertainment, with something to suit everyone: big name bands, at least two club nights a week, bar quizzes and much more. It also offers the opportunity to organize private parties, functions and conferences in the Union Building at the cheapest prices in town.

The Union Society offers many other facilities including the Union Shop which sells everything you might need from stationery to household products. The Shop also houses a Post Office where you can pay your bills and television licence. In addition there is a Print Shop, Endsleigh Insurance brokers, a Book Shop where students can buy and sell text books and a Hair Salon, all offering a quality services at student-friendly prices.

The Athletic Union offers a spectrum of sporting facilities and supports over 60 different clubs. In addition, the Union funds 150 different societies, giving its members the chance to pursue their own interests - political, cultural or social, so there’s always something to get involved in.

The Student Job Shop is part of the Education Unit and can help you to find suitable part-time employment or vacation work. The Education Unit is also a source of academic advice, representation and training for students and the ncl+ area is the place to go to find out about the range of activities available outside of studies.

The Student Advice Centre (SAC) is located on the first floor of the Union. It provides free, impartial, professional advice on a range of issues such as health, housing finance, immigration, legal and consumer issues (see page 8 for more details).

The Student Bus runs from 7.00 pm till late Monday to Friday during term time. It picks up at the Robinson Library, the Medical School and the Union, and drops you at your doorstep. Yearly passes or pay-as-you-go are at extremely reasonable prices and priority is given to lone female students.

Nightline
If you need some information, advice or just a chat, Nightline is a confidential, non-judgmental telephone service offered by the Union Society. It runs from 8.00 pm to 8.00 am, telephone 0191 261 2905. The number is printed on the back of each student smart card.

Students’ Union Website
For more information about the Union Society and the services it offers, visit the website at www.unionsociety.co.uk or email: union.society@ncl.ac.uk.
University of Newcastle Children's Loan Equipment Scheme

The U.N.C.L.E. scheme loans child safety equipment to students with small children. Equipment includes stair gates, fireguards, cots, sterilizers, pushchairs, highchairs, baby monitors, strollers and cooker guards.

The charge for this equipment is minimal - £2 per term and £2 summer vacation registration fee plus £1 per item per term/vacation hire. A post-dated cheque is required as a deposit, which is returned to the student at the end of the loan period providing the equipment is returned in a satisfactory condition.

The U.N.C.L.E. office is situated in the Education Unit on the 1st floor of the Union Society.

There are 2 sessions per week although session times and days can vary. The scheme operates on an appointment only basis.

To arrange an appointment email: uncle.union@ncl.ac.uk

U.N.C.L.E's Toy Library

The U.N.C.L.E. scheme now includes a Toy Library for preschool children of students at Newcastle University. The U.N.C.L.E. scheme offers packages of toys for different ages and also loans separate larger/more expensive toys for a small fee.

There is a registration fee for the academic year (as above) but if you have already registered with us for baby equipment there is no need to register again.

We also ask for a post-dated cheque as a deposit.

Sport in the University

The Centre for Physical Recreation and Sport

The Centre for Physical Recreation and Sport along with the Athletic Union (AU) are responsible for providing a wide range of sporting opportunities for all students at the university.

The Centre aims to maintain the position of Newcastle University as one of the top ten universities for sport in the country in terms of facility provision, performance of athletic union teams and the quality of service offered to its members. The strategy adopted to achieve this status will be in full consideration of the Sports Continuum, Sports Equity and Sport for All.

The latest developments to consolidate this sporting reputation include the £5.5million Sports Centre opened in July 2005, the upgraded artificial surface at Longbenton which opens in September 2006 and pursuing the sports strategy (adopted in 2006) that resulted in a 56% increase in British Universities Sports Association (BUSA) points in 2005/6.

Details of the full range of Services and facilities available to members and information on the new University Sports Centre are available by visiting our web site at www.ncl.ac.uk/cprs.
PART THREE

Personal Matters

The following sections are related to you as individuals and refer to a range of aspects of your life here, from advice about studying and making progress to advice on protecting yourself and your property.

International students will find a wide range of information tailored to their needs whilst living and studying here.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Content</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sources of Advice and Assistance for Postgraduate Research Students</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postgraduate Student Support Officer</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Study Skills</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crime Prevention and Personal Safety</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information for International Students</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Payments for Teaching and Demonstrating Duties</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sources of Advice and Assistance for Postgraduate Research Students

Your main supervisor should be the first person you turn to for help and advice on a personal basis, for example if you are encountering any difficulties in your study or in things which affect your study. Most difficulties can be easily resolved through your supervisor, though he or she may sometimes suggest that you contact one of the services described in Part Two of this Handbook for specialized information or support.

It is recognized that occasionally a research student may not feel able to approach a supervisor about a particular matter. If you are in such a position, you should discuss the matter with your head of school. If for some reason you do not feel able to discuss the difficulties with your supervisor or head of school, there are several sources of advice within the University including school (e.g. school postgraduate tutor), faculty (e.g. dean of postgraduate studies or graduate school administrator) and University services (e.g. the Student Counselling Service, the Student Progress Service and the Union Society's Student Advice Centre, all described in Part Two of this Handbook). Details about school and faculty support mechanisms are provided in Section Two and Section Three of this Handbook.

Each faculty has a postgraduate tutor who has considerable experience of postgraduate matters and who can offer impartial and confidential advice. The postgraduate tutor is independent of the structures within the faculty that deal with the academic progress of research students and can be consulted in confidence at any stage of your research.

The postgraduate tutors are:

- Faculty of Science, Agriculture and Engineering  
  Professor Mike Goodfellow
- Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences  
  Professor Nina Laurie
- Faculty of Medicine  
  Professor John Kirby

If you wish to make an appointment to see a postgraduate tutor, you should telephone the relevant graduate school office (details in Part One). If the advice you require is gender sensitive, please contact the relevant postgraduate tutor.

Alternatively, contact the Student Progress Service (details in Part One). See also the faculty or school handbook for more sources of help and advice.

Counselling and Wellbeing

The Student Welfare Service provides support and advice to postgraduates through:

- A confidential one-to-one counselling service to help with a wide range of issues;
- Consultation about mental health issues;
- ‘Signposting’ of students to specialist services according to need;
- A Mature Student Orientation Programme;
- Peer mentoring schemes.

Contacts:
  Counselling related queries: student.counselling@ncl.ac.uk  
  Tel: 0191 222 7699
  Other student support queries: student.wellbeing@ncl.ac.uk  
  Tel: 0191 222 7699
  www.ncl.ac.uk/counselling-wellbeing

Study Skills

University study requires each individual student to take significant responsibility for organizing their own work. Information and advice about study skills are available from a number of sources around the University. Some of these may prove helpful to you:

- In particular, you should attend what is offered on your faculty research training programme (see the Faculty Section of this Handbook) as this has been compiled to provide generic skills expected of researchers in your field of study;
- The Robinson Library has a Study Skills section on Level 4. The section includes books about improving your skills. More information and links to useful websites on Study Skills can be found on ‘Stan: Study Skills at Newcastle’ web pages at www.ncl.ac.uk/library/stan;
- The Education Unit within the Union Society offers advice and occasional training sessions aimed at specific groups of students;
- The Dyslexia Tutor offers support for students with dyslexia. The Dyslexia Tutor is based in Disability Support in the Robinson Library;
- The Language Centre (see Part Two) offers support with writing skills;
- Finally, Part Five of this Handbook offers comprehensive Guidelines for Research Students which include a range of suggestions for study.

Many schools provide specific study skills advice within the curricula and offer students the opportunity of practising those skills in a subject-specific forum.
Crime Prevention and Personal Safety

Newcastle upon Tyne is renowned as a safe city to live in, and has one of the lowest rates in Britain of students experiencing crime. It’s easy to become frightened of crime when you read the newspapers and hear stories from other students, but these often paint a worse picture than is true. However, as in any city, you must take care to keep yourself and your possessions safe. The following are a few tips on staying safe.

Keeping yourself safe:

- Try not to walk around alone late in the evening or when it is very dark. If you are going to be out alone, stick to well-lit, busy streets and consider carrying a personal alarm (these are available from the Welfare Officer in the Union Society). Let somebody know where you are going and what time you expect to be back;
- Use expensive electrical equipment discretely. Try not to draw attention to your laptop, mobile phone, iPod…!
- If you are going to be working in the University late, make sure that you let one of your colleagues know and if there are porters in your building you must let them know too. If there are no porters, you should ring the University Police on extension 6666 (0191 222 6666 from a mobile/payphone). You’ll need to let them know when you leave too.

Keeping your home and possessions safe:

- Lock all doors and windows every time you leave the house. Make sure that everyone you live with has their own set of keys and locks up too;
- Don’t leave computers, stereos or anything expensive near windows so that they can be seen from the street;
- If you have a burglar alarm fitted on your house, use it!
- If you live in University halls or flats, don’t allow people you don’t recognise to follow you into the building, even if they say they are visiting a friend. If they are genuine, their friends will let them into the building;
- If you are going to be away from your property for a while, try to avoid it looking empty. Use timer switches on lights (these are available from the Union Society) and let your landlord know that you’ll be away so he/she can check on the property.

Bicycle owners:

If you own a bike, make sure you have the frame number written down, in case of theft. When parking your bike always lock both the frame and front wheel to a bike rack. Use a rack that is well lit and in a public place (there are plenty around campus). Use a D-lock or heavy cable lock with a key (in preference to a combination lock). U-shaped tubular bicycle racks are far more secure than ‘butterfly’ racks. Remove anything detachable and carry it with you (eg lights, the seat etc.). Consider joining the University’s Bicycle Users Group (BUG), whose web pages can be seen at www.societies.ncl.ac.uk/bug/. BUG members can find you a bicycle ‘buddy’, advise on safe cycling routes around town, tell you where to purchase a second-hand bike and can offer other useful tips.

For more information on staying safe:

The personal safety book is available on the University Safety Office website at www.ncl.ac.uk/internal/safety/security-adv.htm
To Lets Ville is a website set up by the City Council, City Police and the University especially to advise students living in the city, www.toletsville.co.uk

If you would like to report a crime, you can contact the University Police on 6666 (0191 222 6666) or the city police on 999 (9 999 from an internal telephone).

If you have experienced a racially motivated crime or harassment, you can also contact ARCH (agencies against racial crime and harassment) on 277 7833. You can contact ARCH anonymously – you will not be made to report the crime to the police. ARCH can also arrange support for you if you wish.

Please note: you DO NOT have to be the victim of a crime to report it to the police.

If you are concerned about crime and would like to speak to someone in more detail, please contact the Student Welfare Service by calling 0191 222 8957 or by emailing student.welfare@ncl.ac.uk.

If you have been affected by a crime, either directly or indirectly, please contact our Student Counselling Service on extension 7699 (0191 222 7699). The counsellors are available Monday – Friday during working hours.

You can also contact Nightline, the student listening service, on 0191 261 2905 – this service is available from 8 pm to 8 am every night of term time.

Information for International Students

The University produces an International Student Handbook each year. This is a comprehensive guide and is generally available to all new international students before they arrive at the University. The content of the Handbook is as follows:

Key Information

- Key dates
- Key contacts
- Other sources of information
- Pre-departure checklist

Planning the Journey

- What is the best time to arrive?
- What immigration requirements are there?
- What do I need to bring with me on the journey?
- How do I get to Newcastle?
- Arriving in Newcastle – how do I get to my accommodation?
- Arriving in Newcastle – frequently asked questions

Immediately after Arrival

- Accommodation
- International Welcome September 2005
- International Welcome January 2006
- Registration

Personal Matters

- Banking
- Finances
- Information for students with families
- Health
- Support and advice
- Religion
About the University
Background to the University
Structure of the University
The Students’ Union
Structure of the academic year
Expectations and plagiarism
Teaching and assessment methods
English language support
Living in the UK
Legal and consumer matters
Using public transport
Shopping in Newcastle
Cultural issues
Newspapers and magazines
Television and radio
If you want to receive a copy of the International Student Handbook, please contact:
International Office
6 Kensington Terrace
Telephone: 222 6856
E-mail: ish@ncl.ac.uk
Website: www.ncl.ac.uk/international
The handbook is also available on the web at:
www.ncl.ac.uk/international/coming_to_newcastle/handbook.phtml
The International Office welcomes visits and can advise you on the professional support services offered by the University of Newcastle upon Tyne.

Payments for Teaching and Demonstrating Duties
General Policy
Payments for teaching and demonstrating duties are governed by the need for such teaching and the amount of finance that a school is able to allocate for this purpose.

Normally only full-time registered postgraduate students are eligible for these duties. Part-time postgraduate students are only used for teaching and demonstrating where full-time students are not available. Payments to other persons not normally eligible are subject to Faculty or Executive Board approval.

Full-time postgraduate students may undertake paid duties in the University provided supervisors are consulted about the time devoted to such duties and that they do not contravene the terms of their studentships.

2006–07 Payment Rates
All postgraduate students involved in teaching and demonstrating duties must be given a copy of these notes so that they are aware of the ground rules and of the rates of payment. The rates for 2006–07 are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Hourly Rate</th>
<th>Holiday pay per hour</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Normal Duties</td>
<td>£11.35</td>
<td>£0.88</td>
<td>£12.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duties requiring more preparation</td>
<td>£20.55</td>
<td>£1.58</td>
<td>£22.13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Procedures for Payment
The Inland Revenue requires the University to pay all full-time and part-time student demonstrators through the payroll system. All postgraduate demonstrators must therefore be issued with appointments by the Human Resources Section.

i) Form TD1/02 needs to be completed for each student and signed by the head of school or an authorized nominee. Students will need to provide the details of their bank account for payment, as well as tax and National Insurance information and complete a P46 tax form if no P45 is available. This will enable complete records to be set up for payment without having to request further information from most students.

ii) Heads of school need to indicate the length of contract, which should be for the duration of the studentship up to a maximum of three years. The appointment must not exceed the duration of the studentship but will remove the need for annual reappointment.

iii) Human Resources will issue a confirmatory letter of appointment to the student with a copy to the head of school for local records.

iv) Payment will be triggered by monthly returns from schools to the Payroll Section of the Finance Office of the form TD4/02.

Forms TD1/02 and TD4/02 are available on the HR Intranet under Human Resources - Payroll – A–Z Index – Teaching and Demonstrating. See www.ncl.ac.uk/internal/hr/cs/paydemon.htm

Enquiries concerning this exercise may be made as follows:

- Teaching and demonstrating rates
  Richard Burrow
  Assistant Director of HR

- Human Resources procedures and contract matters
  Faculty Human Resources Officer or Richard Burrow,
  Assistant Director of HR

- Financial payments, tax and national insurance
  Bob Wilson
  Assistant Director of Finance

- Funding of teaching and demonstrating
  Faculty Head of Administration or Faculty Accountant
PART FOUR

Academic Matters

University Regulations

You will receive guidance and advice from your supervisor, head of school and other key academic staff, as appropriate. The full University Regulations for Postgraduate Research Students follow. Any queries which cannot be handled by your supervisor or school may be referred to the graduate school or Student Progress Service.

The Regulations cover all matters relating to admission to and examination of those undertaking research degrees at Masters and Doctor of Philosophy levels, whether as student or staff candidates.

This Part begins with the General Regulations, followed by the specific regulations for each degree and category of candidate. Supervisors and students are strongly recommended to be familiar with both. The list of contents will guide you to the relevant pages quickly.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contents</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>General Regulations</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Degree of Master of Philosophy</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Regulations for Student Candidates)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination Conventions</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Masters’ Degrees by Research</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Regulations for Staff Candidates)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Degree of Doctor of Philosophy</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Regulations for Student Candidates)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination Conventions</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Degree of Doctor of Philosophy (Integrated)</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Regulations for Student Candidates)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Degree of Doctor of Philosophy (Regulations for Staff Candidates)</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Degrees of Doctor of Letters; Doctor of Engineering; Doctor of Laws;</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doctor of Science in Medicine or in Science or in Engineering or in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agriculture and Biological Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rules for the Submission of Work for Higher Degrees</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rules for the Form of Theses</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
General Regulations

A. General Requirements

1. Students are responsible for making themselves familiar with all regulations and rules affecting them, and are expected to note all posted notices (whether in electronic or paper form) across the University. They must particularly note all dates of semesters and all three examination periods, and note both the times and places where University examinations are to be held.

2. Postgraduate research students are responsible for making themselves familiar with the Guidelines for Research Students.

3. In order to be admitted to the University all students are required to sign the following declaration: ‘I hereby promise to conform to the discipline of the University and to all Statutes, Regulations and Rules in force for the time being, in so far as they concern me’.

4. Students are, except for absence with good cause, expected to attend all elements of their programme of study, including lectures, seminars, tutorials, practicals, laboratory work, language classes, performances, fieldwork and examinations. A student who does not attend classes for more than three consecutive days shall inform the school or graduate school. A student who is absent between 2 and 7 days must submit a self-certification form (see www.ncl.ac.uk/spo/); for absences longer than 7 days, a student must submit a medical certificate.

5. Students are expected to comply with any additional regulations and agreements required of them when using computing facilities, the University libraries, etc. The Information Systems and Services (ISS) and Library agreements are available at www.ncl.ac.uk/iss/rules/agreement.html and at www.ncl.ac.uk/library/. The University Smoking Policy is available at www.ncl.ac.uk/internal/hr/smok2.html.

6. Occasional students (those not pursuing an undergraduate or postgraduate programme of study leading to a degree or other qualification awarded by the University) are not required to pass any entrance examination, but must satisfy the head of school, or relevant senior tutor, of their educational fitness to enter their desired programme of study.

7. All occasional and exchange students are subject to the discipline of the University, must register as students, must pay the prescribed fees and must abide by the regulations regarding progress and examination conventions.

B. Registration and Module Choice

8. All students on taught programmes are required to register at the beginning of each stage of the programme. Ordinarily, this is in the first week of studies (induction week for taught programmes). Only exceptionally, and with the special permission of the degree programme director or director of studies, are students permitted to register after this time. An administration fee may be charged to any student who registers late. Registration outside induction week is normally permitted only for postgraduate research students.

9. Students registering for modular programmes are required to record their choice of modules for the entire academic year by the end of the induction week of Semester 1. Module choice is subject to the written approval of the degree programme director and must meet the requirements of the relevant degree programme regulations.

10. Any changes to module selection are subject to the written approval of the degree programme director. All transfers between modules must be completed before the end of the third week of the semester. Transfers beyond this date are permitted only in exceptional circumstances. For any late module changes, the written approval of the degree programme director is required and all changes must be reported to the relevant school or graduate school so that accurate records are maintained.

11. Students may be permitted, with the approval of the degree programme director, to select modules other than those listed in their degree programme regulations.

12. Students should note that all modules are offered subject to the constraints of the timetable and to any restrictions on the number of students who may be taught on a particular module. All modules are listed in the relevant degree programme handbook, but are not necessarily offered every year. Degree programme regulations are revised annually.

C. English Language Policy

13. All new students whose first language is not English must be tested at registration to assess their level of English language proficiency. A student's performance in the test will not prejudice registration, but will identify students who need support in one or more language skills. Such students may be required to undertake free in-sessional language training. This language training may be via credit-bearing modules or non-credit-bearing courses and is decided by the degree programme director. Achievement of the desired level of proficiency can be made a condition of satisfactory student progress by the degree programme director or, in the case of a PhD student, by the dean of postgraduate studies, who will communicate this requirement to the student in writing.

14. Students may be exempted from the language proficiency test if:

(a) they can provide evidence of English language proficiency at IELTS 7.0 in all four language skills;

(b) they have been educated in an English-speaking country as defined in the list of exempted countries (see the English Language Policy at www.ncl.ac.uk/langcen/els/elp/elptext.htm);

(c) they can provide other evidence of a high level of competence in English, for example successful completion of A levels or an undergraduate programme taught through the medium of English.

Note: Exemptions from the proficiency test can be granted only by Language Centre staff.

D. Accreditation of Prior Learning

15. An undergraduate who has studied at another institution may be admitted directly to the second stage of the degree programme (or the third stage in the case of a four-year degree) in accordance with the University’s policy on Accreditation of Prior Learning (APL) at www.ncl.ac.uk/aqss/qsh/
and with the approval of the admissionsselector. The student will need to make the case that the modules he or she studied elsewhere have resulted in equivalent learning.

16. Students admitted to any degree programme on the basis of APL will not be required to relinquish any previous Higher Education Certificate or Higher Education Diploma award from this or any other higher education institution.

17. The maximum credit for which APL can be offered is one third (i.e. 120 credits) of a 3-year undergraduate degree, one half (i.e. 240 credits) of a 4-year integrated masters degree, and one half of the non-dissertation component of any postgraduate programme (certificate, diploma, masters or IPHD).

18. In all cases, the classification of an award shall be determined only on the modules studied at Newcastle University. The board of examiners for a student who has been admitted to a degree programme with exemption from some modules beyond Stage 1 shall ensure that the weighting given to the remaining modules studied at this institution complies with the weighting specified in the degree programme regulations.

E. Fees

19. Fees and other charges shall be paid at the times prescribed by the University. It is a condition of registration that students have made adequate financial arrangements to cover the cost of all tuition fees and maintenance expenses for the whole period of study at the University.

20. Students who are supported by grant awarding bodies or other sponsors or are deferring tuition fees by means of a fee loan from the Student Loans Company (SLC) shall provide the necessary information for the University to secure payment from the body concerned. Other students will be classified as self-supporting and will be responsible for the payment of their own fees.

21. Home and EU undergraduate students are not required to pay their tuition fees whilst they are a student. Instead, students may choose, if they wish, to defer the payment of all or part of their fees until after they have graduated. In order to defer the payment of fees (in full or in part), students must take out a fee loan through the SLC (Student Loan Company). The SLC will then pay the tuition fee to the University on behalf of the student.

22. Home and EU undergraduate students who chose not to defer their tuition fees will be invoiced for payment in three instalments. Composition fees due from self-supporting students are payable in two instalments: at registration and the following January. Students who do not pay by the due dates may be liable to an administration charge of £45. Details of payment options are available from the Finance Office.

23. Residential charges for students in University accommodation must be paid in accordance with the invoice issued by the Accommodation Office; details of payment options are available from the Accommodation Office. Students who cannot show good cause for late payment, and give a satisfactory undertaking to pay, may be subject to sanctions outlined in the University Credit Policy, and may be expelled from a University residence. For details see www.ncl.ac.uk/internal/finance/matters/.

24. It is the responsibility of students to notify the University, in writing, if they are in financial difficulties and unable to pay their charges by the due date, explaining the reason for the difficulties and their proposals for payment.

25. Where there are any delays in the payments of tuition fees (or other charges relating to academic study at the University), whether by students themselves or by a grant awarding body or other sponsor, and where those students cannot show reasonable cause and give a satisfactory assurance as to payment, the Academic Registrar or nominee may determine an appropriate sanction. Sanctions may include:

(a) suspension of the student's Information Systems and Services (ISS) account, and thus access to University controlled facilities such as ISS clusters and the Library;

(b) denial of the opportunity to sit University examinations or to have assignments assessed;

(c) denial of access to other University facilities, or such sanctions as may be approved from time to time by the Academic Registrar;

(d) exclusion from further study in the University. In special circumstances a student so excluded may be readmitted to the University on the authority of the Academic Registrar, on payment of all outstanding fees and debts to the University together with an administration charge.

26. No degree, diploma or other qualification shall be conferred upon students who have not fulfilled their financial obligations to the University.

F. Discipline

27. Any student who has registered and signed the Declaration is subject to the discipline of the University.

28. All students subject to the discipline of the University are required, at all times during their periods of study, to be of good behaviour, and to observe all regulations affecting them which may be made from time to time by the University or other institutions which they attend as part of a University programme of study.

29. Any student subject to the discipline of the University shall be liable, in cases of misconduct, to such punishment as set out in the Student Disciplinary Procedures at www.ncl.ac.uk/spco/. Misconduct may include being found guilty of an offence in the criminal courts.

30. Students are required to make good, to the satisfaction of the University, any damage or injury they may cause to the property of the University, or to any other institution attended as part of a University programme of study, or to the property of individuals.

31. The University is legally required to take such steps as are reasonably practicable to ensure that freedom of speech within the law is secured for members, students and employees of the University and for visiting speakers. This requirement also extends to the use of University premises, which must not be denied to any individual or body of persons, on any grounds connected with the beliefs or views of that individual, or of any member of that body, or with the policy or objectives of that body. All persons subject to the discipline of the University must comply with the code of practice approved from time to time by the University for the purpose of meeting these statutory requirements.
32. The University is legally required to take such steps as are reasonably practicable to ensure adherence of members, students and employees of the University to the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 and to the Copyright Licensing Agency and Educational Recording Agency Licensing Agreements. Provisions of the Act, and the agreements, are available in all schools, and all persons subject to the discipline of the University must comply with these requirements. Failure to comply with the relevant legislation may result in legal action against individuals and the University.

33. The Academic Registrar may exclude from the University any student who is found to have gained admission through the provision of materially false or misleading information in support of the application. Similarly, a student may be excluded for not disclosing information that would materially have affected the determination of the application for admission. A student so excluded shall have no automatic right to a refund of fees.

34. Any student excluded under the preceding regulation shall have the right of appeal under the University Student Disciplinary Procedures (see www.ncl.ac.uk/spo/).

35. The Academic Registrar may either: (i) withdraw any offer of admission to study at the University; or (ii) cancel any acceptance of such an offer where the offer has been induced by the provision of materially false or misleading information, or by the non-disclosure of information that would materially have affected the determination of the application for admission.

36. Every student is assigned to a tutor who is a member of the academic staff. The requirements to inform the tutor of changes in circumstances, and to attend for interviews with the tutor, are set out in the Progress Regulations for undergraduates and postgraduates.

37. A student may request a change of tutor. The student should consult either the relevant head of school or dean of undergraduate studies or, where appropriate, the dean of postgraduate studies. Advice on how to proceed may be obtained from the Student Progress Service.

G. Fraudulent Applications

38. Persons appointed to any office which Senate and Council from time to time approve formally as having sabbatical status must be full-time registered students of the University.

39. Graduates of the University shall be registered as full-time students for the academic year following the year in which they graduate, if elected for that year to one of the offices which Senate and Council from time to time approve formally as having sabbatical status. This also applies for the following academic year, if re-elected to one of these offices.

40. No-one shall hold sabbatical office (or offices) for more than two academic years, whether consecutively or in total. An academic year for the purpose of this regulation shall be defined as the year, or such part of a year served, for which student sabbatical officers are normally elected, which normally commences in July.

41. The special provisions and exemptions which sabbatical officers may claim in respect of University and degree programme regulations are described in the Undergraduate Progress Regulations H40 and H41 at www.ncl.ac.uk/regulations/. These provisions for sabbatical officers shall apply unless such an officer informs the Academic Registrar, by the end of the induction week of Semester 1, of an election not to rely on such provisions and exemptions, in which case the Undergraduate Progress Regulations shall apply normally to the officer concerned.

H. Tutors

42. Academic dress in the form prescribed by Senate shall be worn at all graduation ceremonies of the University and at such times and on such occasions as may be prescribed by Senate.

L. University Accommodation

43. All students who take up places in University accommodation shall do so for the full academic year, unless other arrangements are explicitly prescribed for a particular University residence. In exceptional cases or if a substitute is found who is acceptable to the warden in question or where there is no warden, to the Accommodation Office, this rule may be relaxed at the discretion of the warden of or the Accommodation Office as appropriate. Additionally, students in a hall of residence may apply to transfer to non-catered University accommodation within the first six weeks of the start of the academic year on agreement to pay a fixed transfer fee at a rate to be determined annually by the University.

M. Change of Address

44. Students shall immediately notify their school, faculty or graduate school office of changes to their home or local address. It is particularly important that the school has a student’s contact details during and following the Semester 2 assessment period in order to send details of examination and other assessment results. Students are encouraged to check, through their Personal Development Planner or otherwise, that these details have been correctly recorded.

N. Health

45. Students, other than those living at home, are required to bring their National Health Service medical cards with them when they come into residence, and to register under the National Health Service with a local medical practitioner or make other local arrangements.

46. Any student who is suffering from an infectious illness deemed, on the advice of the Health Protection Agency (HPA), to represent a significant risk to others, shall not attend the University until satisfactory medical evidence is presented that there is no longer any risk of infection.

47. Students suffering from such an illness and living in University accommodation, and who are deemed by the HPA not to require hospitalization, may wish to go home; alternatively, they should remain in their current accommodation. The University will consult the HPA to ensure that appropriate steps are taken to minimise the risk to others. Likewise, students in private accommodation may wish to go home; alternatively they should remain in their accommodation, and steps must be taken, through appropriate health care agencies, to minimise the risk to other occupants and neighbours.

P. Conferment of Qualifications

48. A University qualification shall be deemed to be conferred on publication of the relevant pass list,
authorised by the Academic Registrar. However, the University reserves the right to correct any errors that are subsequently identified on such lists.

49. Students who wish to attend their graduation ceremony shall make an application to do so in the form prescribed, and must pay such fees as may be prescribed. Students who fail to apply may be excluded from the ceremonies. Only students on whom a degree has been conferred shall be eligible to attend graduation.

50. Graduation ceremonies shall be held at such times and places, and in such manner as Senate may prescribe.

R. Assessments and Conduct of Examinations

51. All students offering themselves for any examination shall abide by the rules governing the conduct of University examinations published by the Academic Registrar (www.ncl.ac.uk/examinations/RULES.htm). Alternative arrangements may be made for students with permanent or temporary disabilities in accordance with the Disability Support Services’ Assessment and Examination Provision (www.ncl.ac.uk/disability.services/examinations/).

52. Registration of module choice for a degree programme, or other programme of study, shall constitute registration for the assessment associated with the module concerned. Where a degree programme, or other programme of study, does not involve a registration of module choice, students shall submit, by the end of the induction week, a completed and approved examination entry form for the relevant assessments.

53. External candidates for examinations shall submit approved External Candidate Examination Entry Forms by the deadline prescribed by the Academic Registrar.

54. Any examination, or re-examination, fee payable to the University is due when the entry form is received by the Academic Registrar. Entries for examinations or notification of components of an examination which are not submitted within the time limits prescribed will only be accepted with good cause for non-compliance with these limits. A candidate who is permitted to submit an entry or notification outside the prescribed time limit may be liable to pay an administration charge.

55. Students are required to present themselves for all components of an examination for which they have entered. Students who fail to so present themselves will be subject to the terms of the Examination Conventions, except where the consideration of an ‘aegrotat’ degree is appropriate.

56. Students are responsible for retaining all forms of assessed work returned to them after marking. Assessed work so retained may be recalled from students, if required by external examiners or for examination review purposes, or for quality assessment or audit purposes. Rules governing the arrangements for the retention and recall of assessed work shall be specified in the relevant degree programme handbook.

57. A student who withdraws from an examination is not entitled to recover any annual or examination fee paid, and the fee is not transferred to a later occasion of examination. The Academic Registrar shall have power to authorize the refund of any fee in exceptional circumstances.

58. (a) Any person entrusted with the superintendence of a University examination shall, on the discovery of any irregularity in the conduct of a candidate within the examination room, warn the candidate of the nature of the suspected irregularity, confiscate any illicit material, and tell the candidate that a report of this event will be made in writing to the chairman of the board of examiners and to the Academic Registrar. In the case of an examination irregularity, the student will be warned of the nature of the offence. The University’s procedures governing assessment irregularities are available at www.ncl.ac.uk/spo/.

(b) The candidate shall be subject to such academic consequences as the board of examiners may determine with regard to the marking of the work and may also be subject to disciplinary action as determined by the chair of the board of examiners or the Academic Registrar, as appropriate, in accordance with the University Student Disciplinary Procedures. The University's procedures governing assessment irregularities are available at www.ncl.ac.uk/spo/Assess_Irregularities.

59. Any student whose examination script, or other work submitted for assessment towards a degree, diploma or other qualification to be granted by the University, contains the unacknowledged work of another, either verbatim or in substance, or contains fabricated research results, shall be subject to the provisions of Regulation 58 above.

Extraordinary Examinations

60. In respect of any examination, students may apply for an extraordinary examination if:

(a) they are prevented from attending or completing it by illness or other circumstances acceptable to University Concessions Committee or

(b) they would be seriously disadvantaged by having to wait for the next ordinary occasion of examination.

Application for an extraordinary examination, by or on behalf of a student, shall be submitted to University Concessions Committee in the prescribed manner (www.ncl.ac.uk/spo/Concessions/).

61. For purposes of determining the number of occasions on which a candidate may sit an examination, an extraordinary examination counts as the same occasion of examination as the examination for which it was granted.

62. Students:

(a) who fail to present themselves for a component of an examination for which they have entered and

(b) to whom paragraph 60(a) above does not apply shall be awarded a mark of zero for this component of the assessment.

S. Safety

63. The University, through its risk assessments, aims to ensure that this is a safe place for students to study and undertake research. Students and others must comply with the University's arrangements for safety and occupational health which are set out in the University Safety Policy (www.safety.ncl.ac.uk) and the respective school safety policies. It is especially important that the University fire safety rules are complied with as these are in place in order to protect lives. There are additional specific policy supplements and guidance available on the University Safety Office website and the Occupational Health Service

Regulations for Student Candidates for the Degree of Master of Philosophy

Postgraduate research students are responsible for making themselves familiar with the Guidelines for Research Students approved by Senate from time to time which are available to them each academic year and which are included in the Handbook for Research Students and Supervisors.

A. Introduction

1. Applicants for the degree of Master of Philosophy are required to show familiarity and understanding of the chosen subject and its principal sources and authorities. A candidate must demonstrate the ability to deal with the chosen subject in a competent and scholarly manner displaying critical discrimination and a sense of proportion in evaluating the evidence and opinions of others. The thesis submitted by the candidate should be clear, well-written and orderly in arrangement and include a bibliography in which the sources used are accurately and systematically presented.

2. Where the University has approved that research students may be registered and managed by a Research Institute, the Director of the Institute has the same authority and responsibility as a head of school. (In these situations references to school and head of school include institute and director of institute.)

B. Admission as a Candidate for the Degree of Master of Philosophy

3. An applicant may be approved for admission as a candidate for the degree of Master of Philosophy by a minimum of two postgraduate admissions selectors in accordance with the University’s Postgraduate Admissions Policy and faculty / programme criteria approved by respective deans of postgraduate studies where an applicant:

(a) is a graduate of this or another approved university or other approved degree awarding body or holds other qualifications approved by the dean of postgraduate studies;

(b) has completed an approved application, including:

(i) an indication of the intended field of advanced study and research;

(ii) evidence that the applicant's English language proficiency meets the published requirements for the programme of research;

(iii) evidence of the applicant's suitability to become a candidate in terms of academic ability and prior training and experience;

(c) has supplied details of two recent referees and evidence of qualifications and experience as the postgraduate admissions selectors and/or the dean of postgraduate studies may require.

4. Where an applicant has previously studied for a Master of Philosophy at another institution and wishes this to be taken into account at Newcastle University, the application must be approved by the dean of postgraduate studies.

5. In considering an application for admission as a candidate for the degree of Master of Philosophy, the postgraduate admissions selectors must be satisfied not only as to the suitability of the applicant, but also as to the availability to the applicant of appropriate supervision and suitable facilities and resources once the applicant is admitted. It is the responsibility of the relevant head of school, directly or through the postgraduate admissions selectors, to ensure that appropriate supervision, suitable facilities and resources will be available to an applicant once admitted.

C. General Preconditions to the Award of the Degree of Master of Philosophy

6. Before being awarded the degree of Master of Philosophy, a student must:

(a) satisfy the entrance requirements for the degree;

(b) register for and make satisfactory progress in the relevant programme of study;

(c) satisfy the examiners in the assessments specified.

D. Supervision of Students

7. A candidate for the degree of Master of Philosophy must engage in advanced study and research under the direction of a supervisory team in the University. The academic supervisor is appointed by the head of school, or nominee, before a candidate is accepted onto the programme of study.

8. To be eligible to supervise candidates for the degree of Master of Philosophy, a member of staff must hold a research degree or have equivalent research expertise. The appropriateness of the research degree or equivalent expertise should be determined by the relevant head of school in consultation with the dean of postgraduate studies.

9. The head of school will designate a member of the supervisory team to be the academic supervisor. The academic supervisor will be a member of staff of
Newcastle University and will normally have had previous experience of at least one successful supervision. The academic supervisor will have primary responsibility for supporting the student throughout the period of study. Any reference to the supervisor or supervisory team in these regulations or in the Guidelines for Research Students or in other documents shall be deemed to be a reference to the supervisory team. However, practically, the academic supervisor will normally act on behalf of the supervisory team for matters other than progression.

10. In any case where students are studying outside the University at another institution, arrangements may also be made for local supervision and support to be provided to the student by staff at that institution (see Regulation 14). Such arrangements will supplement the role of the academic supervisor detailed in Regulation 9 above.

11. Where only one supervisor is available an additional adviser will be appointed by the head of school, with the approval of the dean of postgraduate studies.

E. Period of Study and Registration Requirements

12. An applicant may be approved as a candidate for the degree of Master of Philosophy on the basis of either:

   (a) a minimum period of 12 months in full-time study; or
   (b) a minimum period of 24 months in part-time study.

13. Approved candidates shall be required to register as appropriate as full-time or part-time students of the University for the duration of the minimum period specified, and to abide by the requirements of the University's General Regulations. A student’s period of study is reckoned from the date of first registration for the degree of Master of Philosophy.

F. Study Undertaken Outside the University

14. Any student may be permitted by a dean of postgraduate studies, on the recommendation of the relevant supervisory team and head of school, to study outside the University, provided that in respect of any period of study not undertaken in the University, the dean of postgraduate studies is satisfied before the beginning of that period of study that:

   (a) the student will have access to adequate facilities and resources;
   (b) sufficient time for study and research will be available to the student;
   (c) appropriate arrangements have been made for the student’s supervision during the period of study outside the University, including arrangements for the supervisory team to maintain contact with and to meet with the student as often as is necessary;
   (d) appropriate arrangements have been made in any case where the student is attached to or working at an institution outside the University and is offered local supervision and support by staff at that institution.

G. Attendance and Progress

15. A student registered for the degree of Master of Philosophy shall comply with the University’s requirements for progression, as follows:

   (a) Within 3 months of registering for the research programme, the student and the University shall have signed an approved learning agreement to cover the period of candidature;
   (b) Students who are pursuing a course of study without a pre-approved project proposal should, within the guidelines identified by the graduate school, submit project proposals for approval by an independent school panel. Progression on the programme will be dependent upon acceptance of the project proposal. If, even after a re-assessment opportunity, the school panel does not approve the arrangements for the project it will be the annual progression panel that will be required to make a recommendation regarding the outcome for a student (see Regulation 18).

16. The school will appoint a progress panel for each student. The progress of each student will be reviewed annually, although this requirement may be stayed at the discretion of the dean if the student is ready to submit a thesis within the 12 month registration period.

17. The supervisory team shall submit an annual report concerning the progress of the student’s research for review by the appointed progress panel.

18. The progress panel will make a report to the dean of postgraduate studies via the graduate school and further progress on the programme of study is subject to approval by the dean of postgraduate studies. In addition to detailed feedback that the progress panel may wish to provide to the student and the supervisory team, the progress panel will make one of the following recommendations to the graduate school:

   (a) That the student’s performance is satisfactory and that study for the Master of Philosophy may continue;
   (b) That notwithstanding some concerns which the student and supervisory team should note, the student’s overall performance is satisfactory and that the student may continue;
   (c) That the student’s performance is unsatisfactory and that a further assessment should be held within two months to determine whether progress on the programme will be recommended;
   (d) That the student’s performance is unsatisfactory and that no submission for a Master of Philosophy examination is recommended, and that the student’s candidature is terminated.

19. In exceptional cases where the progress panel is not satisfied that the supervisory arrangements are adequate and appropriate, but considers that the student would otherwise be able to achieve the standards of the award, the panel may seek the approval of the head of school, to make a recommendation to the dean of postgraduate studies.
studies for the replacement of all or part of the supervisory team.

H. Progress of Students intending to Transfer to Registration for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy
20. Students who are accepted as candidates for the degree of Master of Philosophy and subsequently to transfer to the degree of Doctor of Philosophy, must normally have received the approval of the relevant dean of postgraduate studies to transfer not later than 12 months after commencing their studies (if studying full-time) and not later than 24 months (if studying part-time). Transfer from registration for the degree of Master of Philosophy to registration for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy shall not normally be permitted unless the student has been registered for the degree of Master of Philosophy for at least nine months. Any student shall, for all purposes under the regulations for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy, be deemed to have registered for that degree at the date of initial registration as candidate for the degree of Master of Philosophy.

J. Procedure for Dealing with Unsatisfactory Progress
21. A student whose progress is considered unsatisfactory by the supervisory team shall be notified in writing of the reasons for this opinion and shall be given the opportunity of an interview with the supervisory team. Following this notice and any interview, and taking account of all known circumstances, the student's attendance, progress and performance may be monitored; this may require the undertaking of additional pieces of work. If the student's performance has not improved within the period specified in the written notice, the supervisory team shall notify the dean and submit a report for review by the progress panel. The progress panel will make a report to the dean of postgraduate studies via the graduate school (in accordance with Regulation 18).

K. Procedure for Review of Penalties for Unsatisfactory Progress
22. A student applying for review of the decision of the progress panel to the University Concessions Committee may do so only in writing, specifying one or more of the following grounds:
   (a) that some irregularity in following the required procedure had occurred;
   (b) that the progress panel were not aware of circumstances affecting the student’s performance. (That is: the student was adversely affected by illness or other factors of which s/he was previously unaware, or which for a good cause, s/he was unable to disclose to the progress panel);
   (c) inadequate assessment by the progress panel;
   (d) bias or prejudice on the part of the progress panel.

L. Interruption of Study
23. A dean of postgraduate studies may permit the interruption of a student's programme of study for a period to be specified by the dean of postgraduate studies.

M. Teaching Duties
24. Candidates for the degree of Master of Philosophy may undertake paid duties in the University during term in any period of full-time study, provided that they consult their academic advisor or supervisor about the time that may be devoted to such duties and provided that they do not contravene the terms of any studentship that they might hold. Ordinarily, this will mean that teaching duties are additional to the normal commitments of a sponsored full-time student.

N. Submission
25. The results of a student's advanced study and research must be embodied in a thesis in the approved form (see items XIV and XV). The length of a thesis shall be determined bearing in mind the requirements laid down, or guidance issued, if any, by the student's graduate school. The thesis must be submitted, together with the necessary submission form and other material, to the relevant graduate school office.

26. The exact title of a student's thesis should normally be submitted on the appropriate form for approval by the dean of postgraduate studies no less than one month before the thesis is submitted.

27. The thesis must be submitted for examination within the period specified below from the date appointed as the beginning of the period of study:
   (a) within two years in the case of students registered full time;
   (b) within four years in the case of students registered part time.

28. Except with the permission of the appropriate dean of postgraduate studies, a student may not submit a thesis earlier than the beginning of the last term of the prescribed period of study. Students who submit a thesis at the beginning of the last term of the prescribed period of study or, with the appropriate permission, earlier, shall nevertheless still be required to pay tuition fees (full-time or part-time as appropriate, depending on the type of candidature) for the whole of the prescribed period of study.

P. Extensions of Time for Submission
29. In exceptional cases, an extension of time for submission may be granted by the appropriate dean of postgraduate studies, subject to the student presenting a case justifying such an extension, supported by the supervisory team. Students granted extensions of time in accordance with this provision, may be required to pay fees as the University shall prescribe from time to time.

Q. Students Writing-up a Thesis
30. Students who have completed their research and who require the continued use of University library and computing facilities but who are completing the writing of their thesis and do not need normal supervision may be permitted on the recommendation of their supervisory team in consultation with the appropriate head of school to register as ‘full-time (writing-up)’ or ‘part-time (writing-up)’ students. The full-time (writing-up) mode of registration is open only to those who have completed the minimum period of registration specified in regulation 12(a) above.

Notes
(i) Students who have completed the minimum period of registration specified in regulation 12(b) will not be permitted to register under the full-time (writing-up) mode of registration.
(ii) Since students at the writing-up stage will have completed all experimental work and data collection, those who are registered under either of the writing-up categories will not be permitted to work in laboratories or studios or to take part in field trips (unless they have the authority of the appropriate head of school to do so for teaching or demonstrating purposes).

31. Exceptionally, a student who is neither required to register nor chooses to register after the completion of the minimum required period of registration specified in Regulation 12 is deemed to be on a leave of absence from the University. The reason for the absence shall be noted as writing-up, but it is understood that such a student will not normally be granted access to University facilities or supervisory support.

S. Examination
32. Details of the required arrangements for the examination are provided in the Master of Philosophy Examination Conventions (Student Candidates)
T. Language of Submission
33. A student’s thesis must be written in English. In exceptional cases, subject to the student justifying such a concession, the appropriate dean of postgraduate studies may allow the student to submit a thesis written in a modern language other than English. Such a concession shall only be granted where a student can demonstrate that the language of submission is integral to the research project, for example where the object of study is an aspect of the literary or linguistic culture of the language of submission and/or a significant proportion of the secondary literature on the object of study is written in the language of submission. Approval for submission in a language other than English must be sought at the time of application to study for the degree. Where approval is granted, the abstract of the thesis must be written in English.

Notes
The University cannot undertake to arrange the examination of a thesis immediately after its submission. Students are warned that several weeks may elapse between the submission of a thesis and the completion of the examination, and should consult with their academic supervisor well in advance. The normal period between a submission of a thesis and an examination is ten weeks, although circumstances may necessitate a longer timeframe.

Examination Conventions for Student Candidates for the Degree of Master of Philosophy

A. Scope
1. These Examination Conventions apply to all students of Newcastle University who, having met the requirements of the University’s General Regulations and of the Master of Philosophy Degree Regulations (Student Candidates), are eligible to submit a thesis for examination for the degree of Master of Philosophy.

B. The Examiners
2. A student’s thesis shall be examined by examiners appointed by the dean of postgraduate studies. The examination shall consist of a review and assessment of the student’s thesis (and where appropriate, other artefacts). A student may be required to take an oral examination in addition to submitting a thesis.

3. There shall ordinarily be one external examiner and one internal examiner appointed for each student. The examiners will be nominated by the relevant head of school in consultation with the student’s academic supervisor. Such nominations shall be submitted on the approved form at the same time as the student submits an application for approval of thesis title.

4. The supervisory team will provide students with the opportunity to comment on the nominated examiners. If the student believes that there is a concern about the nominated examiners this should be drawn to the attention of the supervisory team and the head of school in writing, as soon as possible. Examiner appointments will, however, be reviewed only if it is clear that there may be bias or prejudice by an examiner.

5. A member of the supervisory team will not be appointed as an internal examiner. Where the University is unable to appoint an internal examiner a second external examiner will be appointed.

6. A former member of staff of the University shall not normally be appointed as an external examiner until at least five years have elapsed since that person left the employment of the University. A retired member of staff of the University shall not normally be appointed as an external examiner. A retired member of staff of another institution may be appointed as an external examiner only if he or she is still active in the field of research and study concerned.

C. Nature of the Examination
7. The examination shall consist of a review and assessment of the student’s thesis by the examiners appointed, chaired by the external examiner.

8. (a) The examiners shall determine whether or not the student should be examined orally. A decision not to examine the student orally can only be made if the thesis is considered satisfactory (i.e. the examiners may not fail a student or recommend that the thesis be resubmitted without holding an oral examination). The normal practice will be that an oral examination is convened unless the external examiner contacts the graduate school to stay the oral examination.

(b) If an oral examination is required, the academic supervisor may, at the request of the student, be present during the oral examination but will make no contribution to the examination. However, in all cases, the academic supervisor should be available to be consulted by the examiners on the occasion of the oral examination and will have the right to confer with the examiners on request.

(c) The academic supervisor will co-ordinate the arrangements for the oral examination.

9. Where an oral examination is held, the purpose of such an examination will be to enable the examiners:

(a) to establish that the research has been undertaken by the student;
(b) to test the ability of the student to defend his or her thesis;
(c) to establish whether the student has a satisfactory knowledge of the wider field surrounding the research topic.

10. In examining a student’s thesis, the examiners should take into consideration both the extent and merit of the work submitted and the quality of the exposition. With regard to the extent of the work, the examiners should satisfy themselves that the student’s work shows evidence of adequate industry and application. With regard to the merit of the work, the student is expected to show distinct ability in conducting original investigations and in testing ideas, whether the student’s own or others’. The exposition of the work in the thesis must be clear and must show that the student understands the relationship of the work embodied in the thesis and the theme of that work to a wider field of knowledge.

11. In the case of any work done jointly, or in wider collaborations, or under direction, it is important that the extent of the student’s own contribution is made clear both in any introductory element of the thesis and at relevant points within the thesis.

D. Examiners’ Final Reports
12. Having considered all the evidence presented to them, the examiners shall submit on the approved form a joint report on the examination. The report shall include a written statement concerning the student’s performance together with a recommendation as to the outcome of the examination.

E. Recommendations Open to the Examiners
13. Following the first submission and examination of a student, the examiners may make the following recommendations:

(a) That the student be admitted to the degree of Master of Philosophy or
(b) That the student be admitted to the degree of Master of Philosophy subject to minor corrections of the text made to the satisfaction of the

academic supervisor, normally within a period of one month of receiving formal notification of the corrections to be made or

That the student be admitted to the degree of Master of Philosophy subject to minor revisions being made to the satisfaction of the internal examiner, normally within a period of six months of receiving formal notification of the revisions to be made;

(b) That the student be permitted to revise and re-submit the thesis within twelve months and be re-examined orally or

That the student be permitted to revise and re-submit the thesis within twelve months without a further oral examination;

(c) That the student’s thesis be deemed to be of a satisfactory standard, but that the student be adjudged to have failed to satisfy the examiners in the oral examination and that the student therefore be required to submit within six months either for a second oral examination or for a written examination, as the examiners shall determine;

(d) That no degree be awarded and that the student be deemed to have failed.

Minor Revisions or Corrections

14. Recommendation 13(a) may be made subject to a requirement that the student correct minor textual errors or make minor revisions to the thesis before the deposit of a copy of the thesis in the University Library in accordance with the Rules for the Submission of Work for Higher Degrees.

15. Where minor textual corrections are required, students will be advised by the relevant graduate school office that the corrections must be made within one month of receiving formal notification of the corrections to be made. It shall be the responsibility of the student’s academic supervisor to certify that the necessary corrections have been made before a pass list can be issued.

16. Where minor revisions to the thesis are required, the student shall normally be required to make the revisions within six months of receiving formal notification of the revisions to be made.

17. In exceptional cases, an extension of time for making the corrections may be granted by the appropriate dean of postgraduate studies, subject to the student presenting a case justifying such an extension, supported by the student’s academic supervisor.

18. It shall be the expectation that the thesis will not require referral back to the external examiner and that the student will not be expected to undergo a further oral examination. However, if the internal examiner feels that any recommendation other than recommendation 13(a) is appropriate following reconsideration of the thesis after the minor revisions have been made, the internal examiner shall refer the thesis to the external examiner. Where a thesis is thus referred to the external examiner, the examiners may determine that a further oral examination is required and may subsequently make any of the recommendations normally open following full revision and resubmission as set out in Convention 19 below.

Resubmission for Re-examination by Internal and External Examiners

19. Where a student has been permitted to revise and resubmit a thesis in accordance with Convention 13(b) the options open to the examiners when re-examining the thesis shall be those set out in Conventions 13(a) or (d) only, except that, in the case of convention 13(a) no further revisions to the thesis other than minor textual corrections may be recommended. Where the student’s oral performance on the first occasion of examination was satisfactory and the examiners are agreed, after considering the resubmitted thesis, that a further oral examination is not required, they may submit their recommendations without re-examining the student orally.

Further Oral or Written Examination

20. In the case of a student subject to recommendation 13(c) above, the options open to the examiners following the further oral or written examination shall be those set out in Conventions 13(a) or (d) only, except that, in the case of convention 13(a), no further revisions to the thesis other than minor textual corrections may be recommended.

Provision to the Student of Information about Revisions Required

21. In all cases where a student is required to make corrections to a thesis or to revise a thesis, it shall be the responsibility of the examiners to provide full details of the corrections and/or revisions required of the thesis. The examiners shall provide to the student and the supervisory team, as soon as possible after the examination, a written statement of the nature of the changes they wish to see made to the thesis. The examiners should also attach a copy of this statement to their final report which shall be forwarded to the student and the supervisory team by the relevant graduate school office. When forwarding the final report to the student, the graduate school office will make it clear to the student that resubmission will not guarantee the award of a qualification.

F. Communication of the Result to the Student

22. The results of the examination or re-examination shall be communicated formally to the student by the relevant graduate school office. Neither an examiner nor any other person is empowered to communicate the result formally to a student before the official notification of the result to the student by a graduate school office on behalf of the Academic Registrar. In any case where an examiner chooses to give the student an informal indication as to the recommendation that will be put forward, the examiner concerned must stress that the recommendation is subject to ratification and that only the graduate schools (on behalf of the Academic Registrar) are empowered to issue official results.

G. Disagreement between the Examiners

23. If there is a disagreement between the examiners or doubt about their intentions, they shall be consulted with a view to resolving the matter. Where there is irremovable disagreement between the examiners an additional external examiner shall be appointed.

24. The additional external examiner shall be asked to read the student’s thesis and to conduct an oral examination. The additional examiner shall be told that the previous examiners had failed to reach agreement but will not have sight of their report. On the occasion of this oral examination the student’s supervisory team (and where appropriate the internal examiner) shall be available to be consulted with a view to resolving the matter. Where there is doubt about their intentions, they shall be consulted with a view to resolving the matter. Where there is irremovable disagreement between the examiners an additional external examiner shall be appointed.

25. The academic supervisor shall co-ordinate the arrangements for the examination. After the conclusion of the examination, the additional examiner shall make a recommendation which shall be final. He/she shall submit a final report to the relevant graduate school office which will, subject to the approval of the relevant dean of postgraduate studies, be forwarded to the student and the supervisory team in the normal way.

26. In the event that the recommendation of admission to the degree subject to minor revisions within six months is made, the revisions shall be subject to the satisfaction of the additional external examiner. In the event that the recommendation that the student be permitted to revise and resubmit the thesis within 12 months is made, the

resubmitted thesis shall be examined by the additional external examiner who shall decide whether to conduct a further oral examination.

27. A student who is subject to the procedure set out in Conventions 23 and 24 shall be informed that the examiners originally appointed have disagreed and that an additional examiner will be appointed. The student shall not be informed as to the nature of the disagreement between the original examiners and shall not be given a copy of their final report. If, however, the student subsequently appeals against the final decision in respect of the award of the degree, the report of the original examiners will form part of the formal record of appeal. The student shall be informed that an oral examination will be required. After the oral examination, and once a final decision as to the award of the degree has been made in accordance with Convention 25, the final report of the additional examiner shall be made available to the student and the supervisory team, provided that the additional examiner’s recommendation has been approved.

H. Provision for an Oral Examination to be Conducted Outside the University

28. It is expected that all oral examinations will take place within the University unless specifically requested otherwise. With the approval of the dean of postgraduate studies, an oral examination for a student may be held elsewhere than at Newcastle. Both examiners should be present at any oral examination and only in very exceptional circumstances may the dean of postgraduate studies permit other arrangements to be made. A member of the supervisory team or internal adviser is not normally expected to be present unless at the specific request of the student to attend the venue for an examination held outside Newcastle, but is expected to be available to be contacted by the examiners if required, for example by telephone.

Regulations for Staff Candidates for Masters’ Degrees by Research

A. Introduction

1. Members of staff whose duties permit may choose to register as students under the student regulations for the degree of Master of Philosophy. Members of staff may also apply to proceed as staff candidates in accordance with the regulations set out below.

Note: The regulations below are supplementary to the regulations and examination conventions for student candidates for the degree of Master of Philosophy, to which staff candidates should therefore also refer.

B. Admission as a Staff Candidate for the Degree of Master of Philosophy

2. A member of academic staff of the University may be admitted to the appropriate Master’s degree (by research) in the University if he or she has satisfied the requirements of those regulations. Subject to Regulation 8 below, both full-time and part-time members of academic staff may be considered as potentially eligible to undertake a research degree as a staff candidate.

3. A member of staff who is a junior research associate shall be treated on the same basis as a student with regard to candidature for a Master’s degree by research.

4. A candidate must, at the time of application, specify the Master’s degree to which he or she wishes to proceed.

5. An applicant for the degree must be approved by the relevant dean of postgraduate studies.

6. An applicant must, unless the relevant dean of postgraduate studies determines otherwise, satisfy the formal admissions requirements specified in the student regulations for the Master’s degree to which he or she wishes to proceed.

7. An applicant seeking approval must, after consultation with a supervisory team in the University, submit through the relevant graduate school office to the relevant dean of postgraduate studies:

(a) an indication of the field of advanced study and research which he or she proposes;

(b) evidence of adequate training and ability;

(c) the names of the members of the supervisory team in the University with whom he or she has consulted.

8. If the member of staff does not at the time of registration hold an appointment which extends to cover the prescribed period of study, the dean of postgraduate studies shall, if the application is acceptable on academic grounds, make the registration of the candidate provisional; in such cases final approval shall normally be subject to the extension of the appointment beyond the initial period.

C. Attendance and Progress

9. A candidate for the degree must engage in advanced study and research for a period of not less than two years in the University under the direction of a supervisory team approved by the relevant dean of postgraduate studies. This period may be reduced only in exceptional cases at the discretion of the dean of postgraduate studies.

10. The period of study shall take effect from the date a member of staff is admitted by the dean of postgraduate studies.

11. A candidate must inform the relevant dean of postgraduate studies in advance of any period exceeding 12 months to be spent away from the University. The dean of postgraduate studies shall determine, in each case, what amendment, if any, should be made to the prescribed period of study.

12. The relevant dean of postgraduate studies may permit the interruption of the period of study for a period to be specified by the dean of postgraduate studies in each instance.

D. Submission and Examination

13. A candidate must submit the thesis for examination within four years of the date from which the period of study takes effect. In exceptional cases an extension of time may be granted by the relevant dean of postgraduate studies.

14. The candidate must embody the results of his or her advanced study and research in a thesis in the appropriate form (see items XIV and XV).

15. (a) A candidate’s thesis shall be examined exclusively by external examiners appointed by the relevant graduate school on the nomination of the relevant dean of postgraduate studies.

(b) In the case of junior research associates proceeding under staff regulations only one of these examiners need be external.

16. (a) Any candidate may be required by the examiners to present himself for an oral or written examination or both.

(b) If an oral examination is held, a candidate may, at his or her discretion, ask the dean of postgraduate studies to appoint a member of University staff as an independent observer, who will report on the conduct of the viva.

17. The relevant dean of postgraduate studies shall advise the graduate school on any application from a member of staff approved as a candidate under staff regulations to continue as a candidate for the degree under student regulations after ceasing to be a member of staff.
Regulations for Student Candidates for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy

Postgraduate research students are responsible for making themselves familiar with the Guidelines for Research Students approved by Senate from time to time which are available to them each academic year and which are included in the Handbook for Research Students and Supervisors.

A. Introduction

1. Applicants for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy are required to show ability to conduct original investigations, to test ideas, whether their own or others’, and to understand the relationship of their work and its themes to a wider field of knowledge. A doctoral thesis should be a body of work which a capable, well-qualified and diligent student, who is properly supported and supervised, can produce in three years of full-time study. It should exhibit substantial evidence of original scholarship and contain material worthy of publication.

2. Applicants, including members of staff, who are approved for admission as candidates for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy under these regulations, will be required to pay the student fees for the degree as set out in the annual Fees Schedule.

3. Where the University has approved that research students may be registered and managed by a research institute, the director of the institute has the same authority and responsibility as a head of school. In these situations references to school and head of school include institute and director of institute.

B. Admission as a Candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy

4. An applicant may be approved for admission as a candidate for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy by a minimum of two postgraduate admissions selectors in accordance with the University’s Postgraduate Admissions Policy and faculty / programme criteria approved by the dean of postgraduate studies.

5. Where an applicant has previously studied for a Doctor of Philosophy at another institution and wishes this to be taken into account at Newcastle University, the application must be approved by the dean of postgraduate studies.

6. In considering an application for admission as a candidate for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy, the postgraduate admissions selectors must be satisfied not only as to the suitability of the applicant, but also as to the availability of the applicant to supervise, suitable facilities and resources once the applicant is admitted. It is the responsibility of the relevant head of school, directly or through the postgraduate admissions selectors, to ensure that appropriate supervision, suitable facilities and resources will be available to an applicant once admitted.

C. Conditional Candidature

7. An application for admission as a candidate for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy will normally be approved conditionally. Conditional approval shall be subject to the candidate being admitted initially as a candidate-elect. Doctoral candidature status will be confirmed provided satisfactory progress is made and the relevant progress panel so recommend, and that decision is confirmed by the dean of postgraduate studies.

D. General Preconditions to the Award of the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy

8. Before being awarded the degree of Doctor of Philosophy, a student must:

   (a) satisfy the entrance requirements for the degree;
   (b) register for and make satisfactory progress in the relevant programme of study;
   (c) satisfy the examiners in the assessments specified.

E. Supervision of Students

9. A candidate for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy must engage in advanced study and research under the direction of a supervisory team in the University. The academic supervisor is appointed by the head of school, or nominee, before a candidate is accepted onto the programme of study.

10. To be eligible to supervise candidates for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy, a member of staff must hold the degree of Doctor of Philosophy or an equivalent research degree or have equivalent research expertise. The appropriateness of an equivalent research degree or expertise should be determined by the relevant head of school in consultation with the dean of postgraduate studies.

11. The head of school will designate a member of the supervisory team to be the academic supervisor. The academic supervisor will be a member of staff of the University of Newcastle and will normally have had previous experience of at least one successful supervision. The academic supervisor will have primary responsibility for supporting the student throughout the period of study. Any reference to the supervisor in these regulations or in the Guidelines for Research Students or in other documents shall be deemed to be a reference to the supervisory team. However, practically, the academic supervisor will normally act on behalf of the supervisory team for matters other than progression.

12. In any case where students are studying outside the University at another institution, arrangements may also be made for local supervision and support to be provided to the student by staff at that institution (see Regulation 17d). Such arrangements will supplement the role of the supervisor detailed in Regulation 11 above.
13. Where only one supervisor is available an additional adviser will be appointed by the head of school, with the approval of the dean of postgraduate studies.

F. Type of Candidature, Period of Study and Registration Requirements

14. An applicant may be approved by the postgraduate admissions selectors as a candidate for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy in any of the following categories:

(a) as a student whose minimum period of advanced study and research in the University shall normally be not less than three years of full-time study;

(b) as a student whose minimum period of advanced study and research shall be not less than four years, of which not less than one year shall be spent in full-time study in the University, in periods of at least three months duration;

(c) as a student whose minimum period of advanced study and research shall be not less than six years of part-time study.

15. Any student who wishes to transfer from one of the categories of candidature specified in Regulation 14 to another such category may do so only with the approval of the appropriate dean of postgraduate studies and subject to the recommendation of the relevant supervisory team and head of school.

Note: it should be borne in mind that a full-time student who completes a thesis for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy within the normal three-year period allowed under Regulation 14(a) will have spent part of that time writing up. The fact that a student has reached the stage of writing up a thesis does not therefore of itself constitute grounds for transferring to part-time registration or to full- or part-time (writing-up) registration.

16. In all cases of candidature approved under Regulation 14, approved candidates shall be required to register as appropriate as full-time or part-time students of the University for the duration of the minimum period of candidature specified (unless permitted to submit early; see Regulation 33), and to abide by the requirements of the University’s General Regulations. A student’s period of study shall be reckoned from the date of first registration as a candidate-elect for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy.

G. Study Undertaken Outside the University

17. Any student may be permitted by a dean of postgraduate studies, on the recommendation of the relevant supervisory team and head of school, to study outside the University, provided that in respect of any period of study not undertaken in the University the dean of postgraduate studies is satisfied before the beginning of that period of study that:

(a) the student will have access to adequate facilities and resources;

(b) sufficient time for study and research will be available to the student;

(c) appropriate arrangements have been made for the student’s supervision during the period of study outside the University, including arrangements for the supervisory team to maintain contact with and to meet with the student as often as is necessary;

(d) appropriate arrangements have been made in any case where the student is attached to or working at an institution outside the University and is offered local supervision and support by staff at that institution.

H. Attendance and Progress

18. A student registered as a candidate-elect for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy shall comply with the University’s requirements for progression, as follows:

(a) Within 3 months of registering for the research programme, the student and the University shall have signed an approved learning agreement to cover the period of candidature;

(b) Students who are pursuing a course of study without a pre-approved project proposal should, within the guidelines identified by the graduate school up to a maximum of nine months, submit project proposals for approval by an independent school panel. Progression on the programme will be dependent upon acceptance of the project proposal. If, even after a re-assessment opportunity, the school panel does not approve the arrangements for the project it will be the annual progression panel that will be required to make a recommendation regarding the outcome for a student (see Regulation 21);

(c) Students should attend the University as frequently and at such intervals as the supervisory team shall require, bearing in mind whether the student is registered as full-time or part-time and allowing for any period of study undertaken outside the University. As a minimum, in accordance with the Code of Practice for Research Degree Programmes approved by Senate, students should have regular contact with their academic supervisor at least ten times a year, approximately once per month, and should have formal contact with their supervisory team at least three times a year, normally once per term;

(d) Students should maintain a record of their personal development throughout their period of registration and submit this as evidence of development on an annual basis;

(e) Students should submit reports and evidence of achievement as specified by the school or graduate school on an annual basis. Students may also be required to make a project presentation or submit a piece of work or to attend a viva as prescribed by the school. This material, along with reports from the supervisory team, will be considered as part of an annual submission to the progress panel for each student.

19. The school will appoint a progress panel for each student. The progress of each candidate will be reviewed annually.

20. The supervisory team shall submit an annual report concerning the progress of the student’s research for review by the appointed progress panel.

21. The progress panel will make a report to the dean of postgraduate studies via the graduate school and further progress on the programme of study is subject to approval by the dean of postgraduate studies. In addition to detailed feedback that the progress panel may wish to provide to the student and the supervisory team, the progress panel will make one of the following recommendations to the graduate school:

(a) that performance is satisfactory and that the student can proceed to the next stage. If the student is a stage 1 student the candidature to study for the Doctor of Philosophy is confirmed;

(b) that notwithstanding some concerns, which the student and supervisory team should note, the student’s overall performance is satisfactory and
that the student can proceed to the next stage. If the student is a stage 1 student the candidature to study for the Doctor of Philosophy is confirmed;

(c) that the student’s performance is unsatisfactory and that a further assessment should be held within two months to determine whether progress on the programme will be recommended;

(d) that the student’s performance is unsatisfactory and that a submission for a Master of Philosophy examination is recommended instead of a submission for a Doctor of Philosophy examination;

(e) that the student’s performance is unsatisfactory and that no submission for a Master of Philosophy or Doctor of Philosophy examination is recommended, and that the student’s candidature is terminated.

22. In exceptional cases where the progress panel is not satisfied that the supervisory arrangements are adequate and appropriate, but considers that the student would otherwise be able to achieve the standards of the award, the panel may seek the approval of the head of school, to make a recommendation to the dean of postgraduate studies for the replacement of all or part of the supervisory team.

J. Progress of Candidate-Elect and Confirmation of Registration for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy

23. In the case of students registered as candidate-elect for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy, their progress shall be reviewed (in accordance with Regulation 19) during their first year of study for those candidates studying full-time and in the second year in the case of those candidates studying part-time, with a view to determining whether or not a recommendation should be made to the appropriate dean of postgraduate studies that they should have their status confirmed as studying for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy (see also Regulation 7). The review of a student’s progress shall be carried out in accordance with the procedures agreed in each graduate school or academic school.

24. A student whose progress is not deemed sufficiently satisfactory to allow confirmation of registration for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy may nonetheless be deemed to have made satisfactory progress as a candidate for the degree of Master of Philosophy. In such a case the student shall be permitted to submit a thesis for the degree of Master of Philosophy. Exceptionally, the student may be permitted to continue as a candidate-elect for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy for a further period and be reconsidered for confirmation of their candidature for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy at a later date. Such cases should be reconsidered no later than two months after the initial decision in the case of full-time students and no later than four months after the initial decision in the case of part-time students.

25. A student registered as a candidate-elect for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy whose progress is deemed unsatisfactory at research Master’s degree level shall not be permitted to continue as a registered student or candidate for either degree.

K. Procedure for Dealing with Unsatisfactory Progress

26. A student whose progress is considered unsatisfactory by the supervisory team shall be notified in writing of the reasons for this opinion and shall be given the opportunity of an interview with the supervisory team. Following this notice and any interview, and taking account of all known circumstances, the student’s attendance, progress and performance may be monitored; this may require the undertaking of additional pieces of work. If the student’s performance has not improved within the period specified in the written notice, the supervisory team shall notify the dean and submit a report for review by the progress panel. The progress panel will make a report to the dean of postgraduate studies via the graduate school (in accordance with Regulation 21).

L. Procedure for Review of Penalties for Unsatisfactory Progress

27. A student applying for review of the decision of the progress panel to the University Concessions Committee may do so only in writing, specifying one or more of the following grounds:

(a) that some irregularity in following the required procedure had occurred;

(b) that the progress panel were not aware of circumstances affecting the student’s performance. (That is: the student was adversely affected by illness or other factors of which s/he was previously unaware, or which for a good cause, s/he was unable to disclose to the progress panel);

(c) inadequate assessment by the progress panel;

(d) bias or prejudice on the part of the progress panel.

M. Interruption of Study

28. A dean of postgraduate studies may permit the interruption of a student’s programme of study for a period to be specified by the dean of postgraduate studies.

N. Teaching Duties

29. Candidates for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy may undertake paid duties in the University during term in any period of full-time study, provided that they consult their academic supervisor about the time that may be devoted to such duties and provided that they do not contravene the terms of any studentship that they might hold. Ordinarily, this will mean that teaching duties are additional to the normal commitments of a sponsored full-time student.

P. Submission

30. The results of a student’s advanced study and research must be embodied in a thesis in the approved form in accordance with the Rules for the Submission of Work for Higher Degrees and the Rules for the Form of Theses (see items XIV and XV). The length of a thesis shall be determined, bearing in mind the requirements laid down, or guidance issued, if any, by the student’s graduate school. The thesis must be submitted, together with the necessary submission form and other material, to the relevant graduate school office.

31. The exact title of a student’s thesis must be submitted on the appropriate form for approval by the dean of postgraduate studies not less than one month before the thesis is submitted.

32. The thesis must be submitted for examination within the period specified below from the date appointed as the beginning of the period of study:

(a) within four years in the case of students proceeding under the provisions of regulation 14(a);

(b) within five years in the case of candidates proceeding under the provisions of regulation 14(b);

(c) within seven years in the case of candidates proceeding under the provisions of regulation 14(c).
33. Except with the permission of the appropriate dean of postgraduate studies, a student may not submit a thesis earlier than the beginning of the last term of the prescribed period of study. Students who submit a thesis at the beginning of the last term of the prescribed period of study or, with appropriate permission, earlier, shall nevertheless still be required to pay tuition fees (full-time or part-time as appropriate, depending on the type of candidature) for the whole of the prescribed period of study.

R. Extensions of Time for Submission

34. In exceptional cases, an extension of time for submission may be granted by the appropriate dean of postgraduate studies, subject to the student presenting a case justifying such an extension, supported by the supervisory team. Students granted extensions of time in accordance with this provision may be required to pay fees as the University shall prescribe from time to time.

S. Students Writing-up a Thesis

35. Students who have completed their research and who require the continued use of University library and computing facilities but who are completing the writing of their thesis and do not need normal supervision may be permitted on the recommendation of their supervisory team in consultation with the appropriate head of school to register as ‘full-time (writing-up)’ or ‘part-time (writing-up)’ students. The full-time (writing-up) mode of registration is open only to those who have completed the minimum period of registration specified in regulation 14(a) above. Notes

(i) Students who have completed the minimum period of registration specified in Regulation 14(b) or 14(c) will not be permitted to register under the full-time (writing-up) mode of registration.

(ii) Since students at the writing-up stage will have completed all experimental work and data collection, those who are registered under either of the writing-up categories will not be permitted to work in laboratories or studios or to take part in field trips (unless they have the authority of the appropriate head of school to do so for teaching or demonstrating purposes).

36. Exceptionally, a student who is neither required to register nor chooses to register after the completion of the minimum required period of registration specified in Regulation 14 is deemed to be on a leave of absence from the University. The reason for the absence shall be noted as writing-up, but it is understood that such a student will not normally be granted access to University facilities or supervisory support.

T. Examination

37. Details of the required arrangements for the examination are provided in the Doctor of Philosophy Examination Conventions (Student Candidates).

U. Language of Submission

38. A student’s thesis must be written in English. In exceptional cases, subject to the student justifying such a concession, the appropriate dean of postgraduate studies may allow the student to submit a thesis written in a modern language other than English. Such a concession shall only be granted where a student can demonstrate that the language of submission is integral to the research project, for example where the object of study is an aspect of the literary or linguistic culture of the language of submission and/or a significant proportion of the secondary literature on the object of study is written in the language of submission. Approval for submission in a language other than English must be sought at the time of application to study for the degree. Where approval is granted, the abstract of the thesis must be written in English and any viva voce examination must be conducted in English.

Note:
The University cannot undertake to arrange the examination of a thesis immediately after its submission. Students are warned that several weeks may elapse between the submission of a thesis and the completion of the examination, and should consult with their academic supervisor well in advance. The normal period between submission of a thesis and an examination is ten weeks, although circumstances may necessitate a longer time frame.
of the thesis and of the issues to be explored in the oral examination. It is expected that, if the criteria for the award of the degree have clearly been met, the preliminary reports will be brief (a single paragraph). If, on the other hand, the examiners have serious concerns about whether the criteria have been met, fuller reports will be expected. Each examiner’s preliminary report should be sent to the relevant graduate school office. The reports will be forwarded to the relevant dean of postgraduate studies. They must not be shown to the student or the supervisory team in advance of the oral examination, but examiners should be aware that preliminary reports will be made available to students after the oral examination if they request them under the provisions of the Data Protection Act.

7. Exceptionally, and two weeks or more in advance of a scheduled viva, if the external examiner upon initial independent review of the thesis is unequivocally of the view that the thesis is not worthy of defence without significant re-work by the student, s/he shall contact the graduate school. The dean of postgraduate studies shall then determine whether it is appropriate for extraordinary arrangements to be put in place for the examiners to confer before the scheduled meeting. If approved by the dean, the examiners will be permitted to prepare a joint report. The decision reached under these arrangements shall be limited to Convention 20(b) only – i.e. permitting resubmission, and the terms of Convention 25 must apply. An oral examination will be required after resubmission.

D. Nature of the Examination

8. The examination shall consist of a review and assessment of the student’s thesis by the examiners appointed and of an oral examination on the content of the thesis and subjects related thereto, chaired by the external examiner. The viva shall be conducted in accordance with the guidelines in the University’s Handbook for Examiners of Research Degrees.

9. The purpose of the viva is to enable the examiners:
   (a) to establish that the research has been undertaken by the student;
   (b) to test the ability of the student to defend his or her thesis;
   (c) to establish whether the student has a satisfactory knowledge of the wider field surrounding the research topic.

10. In exceptional circumstances the dean of postgraduate studies may, subject to the agreement of the examiners, exempt a student from the oral examination, subject to alternate arrangements being in place to assess the above aspects.

11. In examining a student’s thesis, the examiners should take into consideration both the extent and merit of the work submitted and the quality of the exposition. With regard to the extent of the work, the examiners should satisfy themselves that the student’s work shows evidence of adequate industry and application. With regard to the merit of the work, the student is expected to show distinct ability in conducting original investigations and in testing ideas, whether the student’s own or others’. The exposition of the work in the thesis must be clear and must show that the student understands the relationship of the work embodied in the thesis and the theme of that work to a wider field of knowledge.

12. The results of the research and study must be satisfactorily presented in the thesis which should include matter worthy of publication. The thesis itself need not however be submitted in a form suitable for publication.

13. In the case of any work done jointly, or in wider collaborations, or under direction, it is important that the extent of the student’s own contribution is made clear both in any introductory element of the thesis and at relevant points within the thesis.

E. Public Presentation

14. In association with the examining process, a student may be encouraged to give a presentation of the work embodied in the thesis in the form of a public lecture or seminar. Such a presentation shall not however form part of the formal examination and shall not contribute to the examiners’ decision on the student’s performance.

F. Role of the Supervisory Team during the Examination

15. A member of the supervisory team will not be appointed as an internal examiner. Where the University is unable to appoint an internal examiner a second external examiner will be appointed. Where two external examiners are appointed, the dean of postgraduate studies will also appoint an independent member of University staff who will chair the viva.

16. The academic supervisor may, at the request of the student, be present during the oral examination but will make no contribution to the examination. However, in all cases, the academic supervisor shall be able to be consulted by the examiners on the occasion of the oral examination and shall have the right to confer with the examiners on request.

17. The academic supervisor will co-ordinate the arrangements for the oral examination and inform the graduate school of the details.

G. Examiners’ Final Reports

18. Having considered all the evidence presented to them, the examiners shall submit on the approved form a joint report on the examination. The report shall include a written statement concerning the student’s performance and the manner in which the work submitted has contributed to the advancement of knowledge and understanding, together with a recommendation as to the outcome of the examination. The report should also address directly any concerns raised in the preliminary reports and make clear the areas required for amendment if they require revisions or resubmission (See Conventions 20 and 30).

19. The joint report must be sent to the relevant graduate school office. The report will be forwarded to the dean of postgraduate studies, copies of the final report will be sent to the student and the supervisory team by the relevant graduate school office (unless there is disagreement between the examiners, see Conventions 32–34 below). A copy shall also be sent to the head of school, unless otherwise directed by the dean of postgraduate studies.

H. Recommendations Open to the Examiners

20. Following the first submission and examination of a student, the examiners may make the following recommendations:
   (a) That the student be admitted immediately to the degree of Doctor of Philosophy or
   That the student be admitted to the degree of Doctor of Philosophy subject to minor corrections of the text made to the satisfaction of the academic supervisor, normally within a period of one month of receiving formal notification of the corrections to be made or
That the student be admitted to the degree of Doctor of Philosophy subject to minor revisions being made to the satisfaction of the internal examiner, normally within a period of six months of receiving formal notification of the revisions to be made.

(b) That the student be permitted to revise and re-submit the thesis within twelve months and be re-examined orally or

That the student be permitted to revise and re-submit the thesis within twelve months without a further oral examination.

(c) That the student’s thesis be deemed to be of a satisfactory standard, but that the student be adjudged to have failed to satisfy the examiners in the oral examination and that the student therefore be required to submit within six months either for a second oral examination or for a written examination, as the examiners shall determine.

(d) That the student has reached the standard required for the appropriate Master’s Degree and should immediately be awarded that degree instead or

That the student has reached the standard required for the appropriate Master’s Degree and should be awarded that degree instead subject to minor corrections of the text made to the satisfaction of the academic supervisor, normally within a period of one month of receiving formal notification of the corrections to be made or

That the student has reached the standard required for the appropriate Master’s Degree and should be awarded that degree instead subject to minor corrections of the text made to the satisfaction of the internal examiner, normally within a period of six months of receiving formal notification of the revisions to be made.

(e) That the student be permitted to revise and re-submit the thesis for the appropriate Master’s Degree within twelve months and, if the examiners so require, be re-examined orally.

(f) That no degree be awarded and that the student be deemed to have failed.

Minor Revisions or Corrections

21. Recommendations 20(a) or (d) may be made subject to a requirement that the student correct minor textual errors or make minor revisions to the thesis before the deposit of a copy of the thesis in the University Library in accordance with the Rules for the Submission of Work for Higher Degrees.

22. Where minor textual corrections are required, students will be advised by the relevant graduate school office that the corrections must be made within one month of receiving formal notification of the corrections. It shall be the responsibility of the student’s academic supervisor to certify that the necessary corrections have been made before a pass list can be issued.

23. Where minor revisions to the thesis are required, the student shall normally be required to make the revisions within six months of receiving formal notification of the revisions to be made.

24. It shall be the expectation that the thesis will not require referral back to the external examiner and that the student will not be expected to undergo a further oral examination. However, if the internal examiner feels that any recommendation other than recommendations 20(a) or (d) is appropriate following reconsideration of the thesis after the minor revisions have been made, the internal examiner shall refer the thesis to the external examiner. Where a thesis is thus referred to the external examiner, the examiners may determine that a further oral examination is required and may subsequently make any of the recommendations normally open following full revision and resubmission as set out in Convention 28.

Resubmission for Re-examination by Internal and External Examiners

25. In the case of a student subject to recommendations 20(b) or (e) above, the revisions expected of the student shall be more substantial than in the case of a recommendation 20(a) or (d). However, these recommendations shall only be made where the examiners are of the view that the thesis is basically acceptable for the degree concerned and/or that it is reasonable to expect the student to be able to attempt to revise and resubmit the thesis successfully in the normal time available and without conducting significant further basic research.

26. If the extraordinary arrangements under Convention 7 have been applied, the examiners will be required to conduct an oral examination upon resubmission.

27. In exceptional cases, an extension of time for making the corrections may be granted by the appropriate dean of postgraduate studies, subject to the student justifying such an extension, supported by the academic supervisor.

Recommendations after Resubmission for Re-examination by Internal and External Examiners

28. Where a student has been permitted to revise and resubmit a thesis in accordance with Conventions 20(b) or (e), the options open to the examiners when re-examining the thesis shall be those set out in Conventions 20(a), (d) or (f) only, except that, in the case of Conventions 20(a) and (d), no further revisions to the thesis other than minor textual corrections may be recommended. Where the student’s oral performance on the first occasion of examination was satisfactory and the examiners are agreed, after considering the resubmitted thesis, that a further oral examination is not required, they may submit their recommendations without re-examining the student orally.

Recommendations Following a Further Oral or Written Examination

29. In the case of a student subject to recommendation 20(c) above, the options open to the examiners following the further oral or written examination shall be those set out in 20(a), (d) or (f) only, except that, in the case of conventions 20(a) and (d), no further revisions to the thesis other than minor textual corrections may be recommended.

Provision to the Student of Information about Revisions Required

30. In all cases where a student is required to make corrections to a thesis or to revise a thesis, it shall be the responsibility of the examiners to provide full details of the corrections and/or revisions required of the thesis. The examiners shall provide to the student and the supervisory team as soon as possible after the oral examination a written statement of the nature of the changes they wish to see made to the thesis. The examiners should also attach a copy of this statement to their final report which shall be forwarded to the student and the supervisory team by the relevant graduate school office. When forwarding the final report to the student, the graduate school office will make it clear to the student that resubmission will not guarantee the award of a qualification.
J. Communication of the Result to the Student

31. The results of the examination or re-examination shall be communicated formally to the student by the relevant graduate school office. Neither an examiner nor any other person is empowered to communicate the result formally to a student before the official notification of the result to the student by a graduate school office on behalf of the Academic Registrar. In any case where an examiner chooses to give the student an informal indication as to the recommendation that will be put forward, the examiner concerned must stress that the recommendation is subject to ratification and that only the graduate schools (on behalf of the Academic Registrar) are empowered to issue official results.

K. Disagreement between the Examiners

32. If there is a disagreement between the examiners or doubt about their intentions, they shall be consulted with a view to resolving the matter. Where there is irreconcilable disagreement between the examiners an additional external examiner shall be appointed.

33. The additional external examiner shall be asked to read the student’s thesis and to conduct an oral examination. The additional examiner shall be told that the previous examiners had failed to reach agreement but will not have sight of their report. On the occasion of the second oral examination the supervisory team (and where appropriate the internal examiner) shall be available to be consulted by the additional external examiner. The dean of postgraduate studies shall appoint a member of University staff as an independent observer, who will report on the conduct of the viva. The academic supervisor shall coordinate the arrangements for the oral examination. After the conclusion of the oral examination, the additional examiner shall make a recommendation which shall be final. He/she shall submit a final report to the relevant graduate school office which will, subject to the approval of the relevant dean of postgraduate studies, be forwarded to the student and the supervisory team in the normal way. In the event that recommendation (a) (admission to the degree) is made subject to minor revisions being made within six months, the revisions shall be subject to the satisfaction of the additional external examiner. In the event that recommendation (b) (that the student be permitted to revise and resubmit the thesis within up to 12 months) is made, the resubmitted thesis shall be examined by the additional external examiner who shall decide whether to conduct a further oral examination.

34. A student who is subject to the procedure set out in Conventions 32 and 33 shall be informed that the examiners originally appointed have disagreed and that an additional examiner will be appointed. The student shall not be informed as to the nature of the disagreement between the original examiners and shall not be given a copy of their final report. If, however, the student subsequently appeals against the final decision in respect of the award of the degree, the report of the original examiners will form part of the formal record of appeal. The student shall be informed that a second oral examination will be required. After the second oral examination, and once a final decision as to the award of the degree has been made in accordance with Convention 30, the final report of the additional examiner shall be made available to the student and the supervisory team, provided that the additional examiner’s recommendation has been approved.

L. Provision for an Oral Examination to be Conducted Outside the University

35. It is expected that all oral examinations will take place within the University unless specifically requested otherwise. With the approval of the dean of postgraduate studies, the oral examination for a candidate may be held elsewhere than at Newcastle. Both examiners should be present at any oral examination and only in very exceptional circumstances may the dean of postgraduate studies permit other arrangements to be made. A member of the supervisory team or internal adviser is not normally expected to be present unless at the specific request of the student to attend the venue for an examination held outside Newcastle, but is expected to be available to be contacted by the examiners if required, for example by telephone.
Regulations for Student Candidates for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy (Integrated)

Postgraduate research students are responsible for making themselves familiar with the Guidelines for Research Students approved by Senate from time to time which are available to them each academic year.

A. Introduction

1. Applicants for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy (Integrated) are required to demonstrate:
   (a) a systematic acquisition and understanding of a substantial body of knowledge which is at the forefront of an academic discipline or area of professional practice;
   (b) the creation and interpretation of new knowledge, through original research or other advanced scholarship, of a quality to satisfy peer review, extend the forefront of the discipline and merit publication;
   (c) the general ability to conceptualize, design, implement and adjust a project for the generation of new knowledge, applications, or understanding at the forefront of the discipline. Where appropriate, also to demonstrate the ability to formulate and test hypotheses and to generate alternative explanations for the data available;
   (d) a detailed understanding of applicable techniques for research and advanced academic enquiry;
   (e) a range of advanced professional and key skills related to their likely employment context including the ability to communicate their ideas and conclusions clearly and effectively to specialist and non-specialist audiences.

2. A doctoral thesis should exhibit substantial evidence of original scholarship and contain material worthy of publication.

3. Applicants who are approved for admission as candidates for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy (Integrated) under these regulations will be required to pay the student fees for the degree as set out in the annual Fees Schedule.

B. Admission as a Candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy (Integrated)

4. An applicant may be approved for admission as a candidate for the degree by a minimum of two postgraduate admissions selectors in accordance with the University’s Postgraduate Admissions Policy and faculty / programme criteria approved by respective deans of postgraduate studies, where an applicant:
   (a) is a graduate of this or another approved university or other approved degree awarding body or holds other qualifications approved by the dean of postgraduate studies;
   (b) has completed an approved application, including:
      (i) an indication of the intended field of advanced study and research,
      (ii) evidence that the applicant's English language proficiency meets the published requirements for the programme of research,
      (iii) evidence of the applicant's suitability to become a candidate in terms of ability and prior training and experience;
   (c) has supplied details of two recent referees and evidence of prior qualifications and experience as the postgraduate admissions selectors and/or the dean of postgraduate studies may require.

5. In considering an application for admission as a candidate for the degree, the postgraduate admissions selectors must be satisfied not only as to the suitability of the applicant, but also as to the availability to the applicant of appropriate supervision and suitable facilities and resources once the applicant is admitted. It is the responsibility of the relevant head of school, directly or through the postgraduate admissions selectors, to ensure that appropriate supervision, suitable facilities and resources will be available to an applicant once admitted.

C. General Preconditions to the Award of the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy (Integrated)

6. Before being awarded the degree of Doctor of Philosophy (Integrated), a student must:
   (a) satisfy the entrance requirements for the degree;
   (b) register for and satisfactorily complete the programme of study. The programme shall comprise taught modules and a research thesis. There will normally be 200 credits drawn from taught modules and the research element will include generic and specific skills training elements as well as the thesis;
   (c) satisfy the examiners in the assessments specified in the relevant programme regulations for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy (Integrated).

D. Supervision of Students

7. A candidate for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy (Integrated) must engage in advanced study and research under the direction of a supervisory team in the University. The academic supervisor is appointed by the head of school, or nominee, before a student is transferred to the research stage.

8. To be eligible to supervise student for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy (Integrated), a member of staff must hold the degree of Doctor of Philosophy or an equivalent research degree or have equivalent research expertise. The appropriateness of an equivalent research degree or expertise should be determined by the relevant head of school in consultation with the relevant dean of postgraduate studies.

9. The head of school, or nominee, will designate a member of the supervisory team to be the academic supervisor. The academic supervisor will be a member of academic staff of Newcastle University and normally have had previous experience of at least one successful supervision. The academic supervisor will have primary responsibility for supporting the student throughout the period of study. Any reference to the supervisor in these regulations or in the Guidelines for Research Students or in other documents shall be deemed to be a reference to the supervisory team. However, practically, the academic supervisor will normally act on behalf of the supervisory team for matters other than progression.

10. In any case where students are studying outside the University at another institution, arrangements may also be made for local supervision and support to be provided to the student by staff at that institution (see Regulation 15(d)). Such arrangements will supplement the role of the supervisor detailed in Regulation 9 above.
11. Where only one supervisor is available an additional adviser will be appointed by the head of school, with the approval of the dean of postgraduate studies.

E. Period of Study and Registration Requirements

12. An applicant may be approved by the postgraduate admissions selectors as a candidate for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy (Integrated) in one of the following categories:

(a) as a student whose minimum period of advanced study and research in the University shall normally be not less than three years of full-time study. These students will normally already have obtained a relevant masters or equivalent qualification;

(b) as a student whose minimum period of advanced study and research in the University shall normally be not less than four years of full-time study. These students will normally not have a relevant masters or equivalent qualification;

(c) where individual programme regulations allow, as a student whose minimum period of advanced study and research shall be not less than six years of part-time study.

13. Any student who wishes to transfer from one of the categories of candidature specified in Regulation 12 to another such category may do so only with the approval of the appropriate dean of postgraduate studies and subject to the recommendation of the relevant supervisory team and head of school.

Note: it should be borne in mind that a full-time candidate who completes a thesis for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy (Integrated) within the normal three or four-year period allowed under Regulation 12(a) or (b) will have spent part of that time writing up. The fact that a candidate has reached the stage of writing up a thesis does not therefore of itself constitute grounds for transferring to part-time registration or to full or part-time (writing-up) registration.

14. In all cases of candidature approved under Regulation 12, approved candidates shall be required to register as appropriate as full-time or part-time students of the University for the duration of the normal period of candidature specified (unless permitted to submit early; see Regulation 34), and to abide by the requirements of the University's General Regulations. A student's period of study shall be reckoned from the date of first registration for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy (Integrated).

F. Study undertaken Outside the University

15. With respect to the research elements of the degree, any student may be permitted by a dean of postgraduate studies, on the recommendation of the relevant supervisory team and head of school, to study outside the University, provided that in respect of any period of study not undertaken in the University the dean of postgraduate studies is satisfied before the beginning of that period of study that:

(a) the student will have access to adequate facilities and resources;

(b) sufficient time for study and research will be available to the student;

(c) appropriate arrangements have been made for the student's supervision during the period of study outside the University, including arrangements for the supervisory team to maintain contact with and to meet with the student as often as is necessary;

(d) appropriate arrangements have been made in any case where the student is attached to or working at an institution outside the University and is offered local supervision and support by staff at that institution.

G. Attendance and Progress

16. With respect to the taught elements of the degree, a student registered as a candidate for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy (Integrated) shall attend and complete the requirements of, and satisfy the examiners in the prescribed assessments for the taught elements of the programme as set out in the relevant programme regulations for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy (Integrated), including the generic and specific skills training elements.

17. The progress of all students registered as candidates for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy (Integrated) shall be reviewed at the end of the first 12 months by the relevant board of examiners and head of school in order for a decision to be made as to whether or not they have demonstrated the potential to succeed on the full programme. Such a review shall be carried out in accordance with procedures agreed for each programme.

18. In the case of any student whose progress is deemed to be unsatisfactory at any stage, the board of examiners or progress panel may recommend:

(a) that, where the relevant programme regulations for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy (Integrated) allow re-examination in the taught elements of the programme, the student be re-examined in the failed modules in accordance with the programme regulations for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy (Integrated);

(b) that the student be required to produce additional work and/or to undergo further review after an additional period of study and research;

(c) that the student be considered for the award of a Masters degree in accordance with Regulation 24;

(d) that the student be not permitted to remain a registered student or a candidate either for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy (Integrated) or for a Masters' degree and that the student's candidature be terminated.

19. With respect to the research elements of the degree, that is, in the second and subsequent years of registration for the PhD (Integrated), the school shall appoint a progress panel for each student and the supervisory team shall submit an annual report concerning the progress of the student. A student shall:

(a) within 3 months of beginning the research element of the programme, have signed an approved learning agreement between the student and the University to cover the period of research;

(b) where students are pursuing a course of study without a pre-approved project proposal, they should, within the guidelines identified by the graduate school, submit project proposals for approval by an independent school panel. Progression on the research element of the programme will be dependent upon acceptance of the project proposal. If, even after a re-assessment opportunity the school panel does not approve the arrangements for the project, it will be the annual progress panel that will be required to make a recommendation regarding the outcome for a student.

(c) attend the University as frequently and at such intervals as the supervisory team shall require, bearing in mind whether the student is registered
as full-time or part-time and allowing for any period of study undertaken outside the University. As a minimum, in accordance with the Code of Practice for Research Degree Programmes approved by Senate, students should have regular contact with their academic supervisor at least ten times a year, approximately once per month, and should have formal contact with their supervisory team at least three times a year, normally once per term;

(d) maintain a record of their personal development throughout their period of registration and submit this as evidence of development on an annual basis;

(e) Students should submit reports and evidence of achievement as specified by the school or graduate school on an annual basis. Students may also be required to make a project presentation or submit a piece of work or to attend a viva as prescribed by the school. This material, along with reports from the supervisory team, will be considered as part of an annual submission to the progress panel for each student;

20. The school will appoint a progress panel for each student. The progress of each student will be reviewed annually.

21. Each supervisory team shall submit an annual report concerning the progress of the student’s research for review by the appointed progress panel;

22. The progress panel will make a report to the dean of postgraduate studies via the graduate school and further progress on the programme of study is subject to approval by the dean. In addition to detailed feedback that the progress panel may wish to provide to the student and the supervisory team, the progress panel will make one of the following recommendations to the graduate school:

(a) That the student’s performance is satisfactory and that the student can proceed to the next stage. If the student is a Stage 1 student the candidateitura to study for the Doctor of Philosophy (Integrated) is confirmed;

(b) That notwithstanding time concerns which the student and supervisory team should note, the student’s overall performance is satisfactory and that the student can proceed to the next stage. If the student is a Stage 1 student the candidateitura to study for the Doctor of Philosophy (Integrated) is confirmed;

(c) That the student’s performance is unsatisfactory and that a further assessment should be held within two months to determine whether progress on the programme will be recommended;

(d) That the student’s performance is unsatisfactory and that a submission for a Master of Philosophy examination is recommended instead of a submission for a Doctor of Philosophy (Integrated) examination;

(e) That the student’s performance is unsatisfactory and that no submission for a Master’s degree or Doctor of Philosophy examination is recommended, and that the student’s candidature is terminated.

23. In exceptional cases where the progress panel is not satisfied that the supervisory arrangements are adequate and appropriate, but considers that the student would otherwise be able to achieve the standards of the award, the panel may seek the approval of the head of school, to make a recommendation to the dean of postgraduate studies for the replacement of all or part of the supervisory team.

H. Award of a Master's Degree

24. In the case of students who have not demonstrated the potential to succeed on the full programme, or who choose not to continue on the full programme, at the end of 12 months, or where the progress of students is deemed unsatisfactory at subsequent stages, they may be considered for the award of a Masters’ degree. In order to qualify for the award of a Masters’ degree, a student must have demonstrated achievement of all the learning outcomes of the degree to be awarded, which may include the submission of a dissertation. The appropriate Masters’ degree will be named in the programme regulations for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy (Integrated).

25. A Masters’ degree may be awarded with Merit or Distinction subject to and in accordance with the regulations for the relevant Masters’ degree.

J. Procedure for Dealing with Unsatisfactory Progress

26. With respect to the research element of the degree, a student whose progress is considered unsatisfactory by the supervisory team shall be notified in writing of the reasons for this opinion and shall be given the opportunity of an interview with the supervisory team. Following this notice and any interview, and taking account of all known circumstances, the student’s attendance, progress and performance may be monitored; this may require the undertaking of additional pieces of work. If the student’s performance has not improved within the period specified in the written notice, the supervisory team shall notify the dean and submit a report for review by the progress panel. The progress panel will make a report to the dean of postgraduate studies via the graduate school (in accordance with Regulation 22).

K. Procedure for Review of Penalties for Unsatisfactory Progress

27. A student applying for review of the decision of the progress panel to the University Concessions Committee may do so only in writing, specifying one or more of the following grounds:

(a) that some irregularity in following the required procedure had occurred;

(b) that the progress panel were not aware of circumstances affecting the student’s performance. (That is: the student was adversely affected by illness or other factors of which s/he was previously unaware, or which for a good cause, s/he was unable to disclose to the progress panel);

(c) that the student’s attendance, progress and performance have not improved within the period specified in the written notice, the supervisory team shall notify the dean and submit a report for review by the progress panel.

(d) bias or prejudice on the part of the progress panel.

L. Interruption of Study

28. A dean of postgraduate studies may permit the interruption of a student’s programme of study for a period to be specified by the dean of postgraduate studies.

M. Teaching Duties

29. Candidates for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy may undertake paid duties in the University during term in any period of full-time study, provided that they consult their academic supervisor about the time that may be devoted to such duties and provided that they do not contravene the terms of any studentship that they might hold. Ordinarily, this will mean that teaching duties are additional to the normal commitments of a sponsored full-time student.

N. Assessment of the Taught Elements

30. The modes of assessment, pass marks and rules relating to reassessment for the taught elements of the
degree shall be as set out in the degree programme regulations for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy (Integrated).

P. Submission

31. The results of a student’s advanced study and research must be embodied in a thesis in the approved form in accordance with the Rules for the Submission of Work for Higher Degrees and the Rules for the Form of Theses (see items XIV and XV). The length of a thesis shall be determined, bearing in mind the requirements laid down, or guidance issued, if any, by the student’s graduate school. The thesis must be submitted, together with the necessary submission form and other material, to the relevant graduate school office.

32. The exact title of a student’s thesis must be submitted on the appropriate form for approval by the dean of postgraduate studies not less than one month before the thesis is submitted.

33. The thesis must be submitted for examination within the period specified below from the date appointed as the beginning of the period of study:

(a) within four years in the case of students proceeding under the provisions of Regulation 12(a);
(b) within five years in the case of students proceeding under the provisions of Regulation 12(b);
(c) where programme regulations for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy (Integrated) allow part-time study, those regulations shall state the number of years in which the thesis must be submitted.

34. Except with the permission of the appropriate dean of postgraduate studies, a student may not submit a thesis earlier than the beginning of the last term of the prescribed period of study. Students who submit a thesis at the beginning of the last term of the prescribed period of study or, with appropriate permission, earlier, shall nevertheless still be required to pay tuition fees (full-time or part-time as appropriate, depending on the type of candidature) for the whole of the prescribed period of study.

R. Extensions of Time for Submission

35. In exceptional cases, an extension of time for submission may be granted by the appropriate dean of postgraduate studies, subject to the student justifying such an extension, supported by the supervisory team. Students granted extensions of time in accordance with this provision, may be required to pay fees as the University shall prescribe from time to time.

S. Students Writing up a Thesis

36. Students who have completed their research and who require the continued use of University library and computing facilities but who are completing the writing of their thesis and do not need normal supervision may be permitted on the recommendation of their supervisory team in consultation with the appropriate head of school to register as ‘full-time (writing-up)’ or ‘part-time (writing-up)’ candidates. The full-time (writing-up) mode of registration is open only to those who have completed the minimum period of registration specified in Regulation 12(a) above.

Notes

(i) Students who have completed the minimum period of registration specified in Regulation 12(c) will not be permitted to register under the full-time (writing-up) mode of registration.

(ii) Since students at the writing-up stage will have completed all experimental work and data collection, those who are registered under either of the writing-up categories will not be permitted to work in laboratories or studios or to take part in field trips (unless they have the authority of the appropriate head of school to do so for teaching or demonstrating purposes).

37. Exceptionally, a student who is neither required to register nor chooses to register after the completion of the minimum required period of registration specified in Regulation 12 is deemed to be on a leave of absence from the University. The reason for the absence shall be noted as writing-up, but it is understood that such a student will not normally be granted access to University facilities or supervisory support.

T. Examination

38. Details of the required arrangements for the examination are provided in the Doctor of Philosophy Examination Conventions (Student Candidates).

U. Language of Submission

39. A student’s thesis must be written in English. In exceptional cases, subject to the student justifying such a concession, the appropriate dean of postgraduate studies may allow the student to submit a thesis written in a modern language other than English. Such a concession shall only be granted where a student can demonstrate that the language of submission is integral to the research project, for example where the object of study is an aspect of the literary or linguistic culture of the language of submission and/or a significant proportion of the secondary literature on the object of study is written in the language of submission. Approval for submission in a language other than English must be sought at the time of application to study for the degree. Where approval is granted, the abstract of the thesis must be written in English and any viva voce examination must be conducted in English.

Note:

The University cannot undertake to arrange the examination of a thesis immediately after its submission. Students are warned that several weeks may elapse between the submission of a thesis and the completion of the examination, and should consult with their academic supervisor well in advance. The normal period between a submission of a thesis and an examination is ten weeks, although circumstances may necessitate a longer time frame.

Regulations for Staff Candidates for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy

A. Introduction

1. Members of staff whose duties permit may choose to register as students under the student regulations for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy. Members of staff may however also apply to proceed as staff candidates in accordance with the regulations set out below.

Note: The regulations below are supplementary to the regulations and examination conventions for student candidates for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy, to which staff candidates should also refer.

B. Admission as a Staff Candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy

2. A member of academic staff may be approved for admission as a staff candidate for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy by a dean of postgraduate studies on the
recommendation of the relevant head of school. Subject to Regulation 4 below, both full-time and part-time members of academic staff may be considered as potentially eligible to undertake a research degree as a staff candidate. Applicants may be approved as staff candidates for the degree by thesis or, except for members of staff who are junior research associates, as staff candidates for the degree on the basis of submission of published work. The staff fees set out in the annual Fees Schedule will apply in the case of any member of academic staff approved as a staff candidate under these regulations.

3. A member of staff seeking approval as a staff candidate for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy shall be required to complete and submit the approved staff candidature application form in which is set out:

(a) an indication of the field of advanced study and research;

(b) details of the nature of the appointment held by the member of staff and its duration;

(c) whether the member of staff wishes to be considered as a candidate for the degree by thesis or on the basis of the submission of published work.

4. In the case of a member of staff who wishes to be considered as a staff candidate for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy by thesis who does not at the time of admission as a staff candidate hold an appointment which extends to cover the prescribed period of study, the dean of postgraduate studies shall, if the application is acceptable on academic grounds, approve the admission of the member of staff as a provisional candidate. In cases where candidature has been approved provisionally, final approval shall normally be subject to the extension of the member of staff's appointment to cover the prescribed period of study. Where a staff member's appointment is not extended to cover the prescribed period of study, the candidate may transfer to student regulations or, if the period of study required by the regulations for the appropriate Masters' degree has been completed, the member of staff may apply to submit a thesis for that degree instead.

5. In considering an application for admission as a staff candidate for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy by thesis, the relevant dean of postgraduate studies must be satisfied not only as to the suitability of the applicant, but also as to the availability to the applicant of appropriate supervisory advice and guidance, suitable facilities and resources.

6. A member of staff who wishes to be considered as a staff candidate for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy on the basis of the submission of published work must have held an appointment in the University for a continuous period of at least four years. A member of staff who has held an appointment for a shorter period may exceptionally be approved as a candidate by the Chair of University Teaching and Learning Committee, on the recommendation of the appropriate dean of postgraduate studies and the relevant head of school, provided that the Chair of University Teaching and Learning Committee is satisfied that a case has been made that the study and research carried out during the candidate's period of appointment has formed the basis of a significant contribution to the published work.

C. Basis for the Award of the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy to Staff Candidates

7. The basis for the award of the degree of Doctor of Philosophy to staff candidates shall be the same as the basis for the award of the degree to student candidates, except that in the case of staff candidates for the degree on the basis of the submission of published work, the work submitted must satisfy the requirements laid down in Regulations 21 to 26.

D. Appointment of Supervisory Team, Internal Adviser or Internal Assessor

8. In the case of a staff candidate who holds an appointment as a junior research associate, a supervisory team shall be appointed as in the case of a student. In the case of all other staff candidates for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy by thesis, an internal adviser, who shall be a member of the academic staff, shall be appointed by the appropriate dean of postgraduate studies on the recommendation of the relevant head of school to provide support, advice and guidance to the staff candidate. To be eligible to act as an internal adviser, a member of staff must hold the degree of Doctor of Philosophy or an equivalent research degree or have equivalent research expertise. The appropriateness of an equivalent research degree or expertise should be determined by the dean of postgraduate studies in consultation with the head of school.

9. In the case of staff candidates for the degree on the basis of the submission of published work, the dean of postgraduate studies shall appoint, on the recommendation of the relevant head of school, an internal assessor to consider whether a prima facie case for the award of the degree can be established (see Regulations 33 to 35).

E. Prescribed Period of Study for Staff Candidates for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy by Thesis

10. The prescribed period of study in the University for a staff candidate for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy by thesis shall normally be four years, but this period may be reduced to three years if the dean of postgraduate studies is satisfied that the greater part of the candidate's time is devoted to supervised research. Exceptionally a further reduction to the prescribed period of study may be approved by the Chair of University Teaching and Learning Committee, on the recommendation of the dean of postgraduate studies and the head of school.

F. Registration

11. All staff candidates for the award of the degree of Doctor of Philosophy by thesis shall be deemed to be registered as part-time students during their period of candidature.

G. Transfer from Master's Degree

12. A member of staff who has been approved as a staff candidate for a Masters' degree by research under the regulations applicable to such candidates may apply to transfer to candidature for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy by thesis, provided the candidate meets the normal requirements for such candidature under these regulations. The candidate of any candidates so transferring shall normally, for all purposes under these regulations, be deemed to have commenced on the date on which the candidature for the Masters' degree originally commenced.

H. Progress

13. A member of staff who is a junior research associate shall be treated on the same basis as a student with regard to progress as a candidate for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy by thesis. Such candidates may be required to attend and complete the requirements of, and satisfy the examiners in any assessments for, any taught programme deemed to be part of the programme of study for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy in a particular school and/or faculty.

14. All staff candidates for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy by thesis shall be required to complete and submit an annual report.
15. The progress of all staff candidates for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy by thesis shall be reviewed each year by the relevant supervisory team or internal adviser and head of school. Each supervisory team or internal adviser shall submit an annual report concerning the progress of the candidate's research for review by the appropriate dean of postgraduate studies.

J. Submission for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy by Thesis

16. The results of a candidate's advanced study and research must be embodied in a thesis in the approved form in accordance with the Rules for the Submission of Work for Higher Degrees and the Rules for the Form of Theses (see items XIV and XV). The length of a thesis shall be determined, bearing in mind the requirements laid down, or guidance issued, if any, by the candidate's faculty. The thesis must be submitted, together with the necessary submission form and other material, to the relevant graduate school office.

17. The thesis must be submitted for examination within seven years of the date from which the period of study takes effect. In exceptional cases an extension of time may be granted by the appropriate dean of postgraduate studies.

18. Except with the permission of the appropriate dean of postgraduate studies, a candidate may not submit a thesis earlier than the beginning of the last term of the prescribed period of study.

K. Submission for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy on the Basis of Published Work

19. A staff candidate for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy on the basis of published work shall be required to submit published work in the form prescribed. The published work submitted shall be considered to be broadly comparable to a PhD thesis in the same discipline, so that it is evident proof of a sustained level of recent research activity normally in a single field of study to which it makes an original contribution.

20. The submission shall consist of a collection of published material including papers, chapters, monographs or books. The publication of papers shall normally have taken place in refereed journals, or other journals held in high standing by academics working in the relevant field. Books, monographs, and chapters in books shall normally have been published by established publishing houses or other recognized publishing media. The publications submitted shall normally relate to work undertaken during a minimum period of three years and a maximum period of six years.

21. Work shall only be regarded as published if at the time of submission copies of the work are generally obtainable through normal sources, such as publishing houses, bookshops and academic libraries. Proofs of papers not yet published but accepted for publication are acceptable. However, reports or other documents prepared for organizations such as private companies, government departments or charities or for internal University purposes are not acceptable unless they have been published widely outside the organization for which they were prepared.

22. In addition to submitting the published works, which shall be bound in the approved form in accordance with the Rules for the Submission of Work for Higher Degrees and the Rules for the Form of Theses (see items XIV and XV), the candidate shall submit:

(a) a list of the published works submitted;

(b) an accompanying Doctoral Statement concerning the work submitted and setting out the proposed basis for the award of the degree and placing the work in its wider context;

(c) the appropriate fee;

(d) the relevant submission form or forms.

23. The number and scope of the works required for a submission, and the nature and length of the accompanying Doctoral Statement must be specified in guidelines concerning the submission of published work for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy to be drawn up in each faculty and subject to approval by the University Teaching and Learning Committee.

24. In the case of joint publications included in a candidate's submission, the candidate shall submit an approved form for each such work submitted indicating the percentage share of the work attributable to the candidate. The candidate will be required to obtain, before submission of each form, signatures from each co-author and collaborator certifying the candidate's share of the work concerned.

L. Examination for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy by Thesis

25. A candidate's thesis shall be examined by examiners appointed by Senate on the recommendation of the dean of postgraduate studies acting on behalf of the appropriate faculty. The examination shall consist of a review and assessment of the candidate's thesis by the examiners appointed and of an oral examination on the content of the thesis and subjects related thereto. A candidate may also be encouraged to give a presentation of the work embodied in the thesis in the form of a public lecture or seminar. In exceptional circumstances, on sufficient grounds submitted by the examiners, the dean of postgraduate studies may exempt a candidate from the oral examination.

26. For staff candidates who are junior research associates, there shall ordinarily be one external examiner and one internal examiner appointed. The examiners will be nominated by the relevant head of school in consultation with the candidate's supervisory team. Such nominations shall be submitted on the approved form at the same time as the candidate submits an application for approval of thesis title.

27. For staff candidates other than junior research associates, the examination shall be conducted by two external examiners appointed for each candidate. The examiners will be nominated by the relevant head of school in consultation with the candidate's internal adviser. Such nominations shall be submitted on the approved form at the same time as the candidate submits an application for approval of thesis title.

28. The main supervisor of a junior research associate will not normally be appointed as an internal examiner unless the dean of postgraduate studies concerned is satisfied that no other member of the University is competent to undertake the examination. In such a case an additional external examiner shall be appointed.

29. The main supervisor, if not an examiner, or the internal adviser, as appropriate, shall not be present during the oral examination. However, the main supervisor, if not an examiner, or internal adviser shall be available to be consulted by the examiners on the occasion of the oral examination and shall have the right to see the examiners on request. The main supervisor or internal adviser will coordinate the arrangements for the oral examination.

30. The recommendations open to the examiners shall be those set out in Regulation 20 of the Doctor of Philosophy Examination Conventions (Student Candidates)

31. In the case of staff candidates (other than junior research associates) the role of the internal examiner shall be fulfilled by one of the external examiners, who shall
decide between them which of them shall undertake the further review of the thesis on resubmission.

M. Establishment of a Prima Facie Case for the Award of the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy on the Basis of Published Work

32. A candidate’s submission shall be initially referred to an internal assessor appointed by the dean of postgraduate studies on the recommendation of the relevant head of school (see Regulation 9). The internal assessor shall consider whether a prima facie case for the award of the degree has been established, bearing in mind the criteria normally applicable to examinations for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy, whether by thesis or on the basis of published work.

Note: the establishment of a prima facie case for the award of the degree does not constitute a formal examination of the submission and does not imply that after consideration of the submission and an oral examination the examiners will recommend the award of the degree.

33. Where the internal assessor is satisfied that a prima facie case has been established, a recommendation shall be made by the assessor on the appropriate form, supported by the relevant head of school, to the dean of postgraduate studies that examiners be appointed.

34. Where the internal assessor is not satisfied that a prima facie case has been established, a recommendation shall be made by the assessor on the appropriate form, supported by the relevant head of school, to the dean of postgraduate studies that the candidate be informed that the submission has not been found satisfactory. In such a case the examination shall not proceed. The internal assessor shall provide a report indicating the areas in which the submission has been found to be unsatisfactory and the information contained in this report shall be communicated to the candidate by the relevant head of school.

N. Examination for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy on the Basis of Published Work

35. Where a prima facie case for the award of the degree has been established, the candidate's submission shall be examined by examiners appointed by Senate on the recommendation of the dean of postgraduate studies acting on behalf of the appropriate faculty. The examination shall consist of a review and assessment of the candidate's submission by the examiners appointed and of an oral examination on the content of the submission and subjects related thereto. A candidate may also be encouraged to give a presentation of the work embodied in the submission in the form of a public lecture or seminar. In exceptional circumstances, on sufficient grounds submitted by the examiners, the dean of postgraduate studies may exempt a candidate from the oral examination. The examination shall be conducted by two external examiners appointed for each candidate. The examiners will be nominated by the relevant head of school in consultation with the candidate's internal assessor. Such nominations shall be submitted on the approved form.

36. The internal assessor shall not be present during the oral examination. However, the internal assessor shall be available to be consulted by the examiners on the occasion of the oral examination and shall have the right to confer with the examiners on request. The internal assessor will co-ordinate the arrangements for the oral examination.

37. Following the first submission and examination of a candidate, the examiners may make the following recommendations:

(a) that the candidate be admitted to the degree of Doctor of Philosophy;

(b) that the candidate be permitted to make a resubmission, including a revised Doctoral Statement, within a period of up to six months as specified by the examiners, and without further oral examination;

(c) that the candidate be permitted to make a resubmission incorporating additional published material and including a revised Doctoral Statement, within 24 months and, if the examiners so require, be re-examined orally. (On resubmission, the material presented by the candidate must still conform to the requirements of Regulation 20 with regard to the period during which the work concerned has been undertaken);

(d) that the candidate's submission be deemed to be of a satisfactory standard, but that the candidate be adjudged to have failed to satisfy the examiners in the oral examination and that the candidate shall therefore be required to submit within six months for a second oral examination;

(e) that no degree be awarded and that the candidate be adjudged to have failed.

38. Recommendation 37(a) may be made subject to a requirement that the candidate correct minor textual errors before the deposit of a copy of the submission in the University Library in accordance with the Rules for the Submission of Work for Higher Degrees. In such cases, it shall be the responsibility of the candidate’s internal assessor to certify to the Academic Registrar that the necessary corrections have been made before a pass list can be issued.

39. In the case of a candidate subject to recommendation 37(b), the candidate will not normally be expected to undergo a further oral examination. However, if the examiners feel that any recommendation other than recommendation 37(a) is appropriate following consideration of the resubmitted material, they may determine that a further oral examination is required and may subsequently make either of the recommendations normally open following full revision and resubmission as set out in Regulation 42.

40. In the case of a candidate subject to recommendation 37(c) above, the revisions and additions expected of the candidate shall be more substantial than in the case of a recommendation under regulation 37(b). However, this recommendation shall nonetheless only be made where the examiners are of the view that the submission is basically acceptable for the degree and/or that it is reasonable to expect the candidate to be able to attempt to revise and add to the submission successfully in the normal time available.

41. In all cases where a candidate is required to make corrections or revisions to a submission or to submit additional published material, it shall be the responsibility of the examiners to provide details of the corrections, revisions or nature and extent of additional material required. These details shall be communicated to the candidate by the candidate’s internal assessor both orally and in writing.

42. Where a candidate has been permitted to revise and resubmit in accordance with regulation 37(c), the options open to the examiners when re-examining the submission shall be those set out in regulations 37(a) or (e) only. Where the candidate's oral performance on the first occasion of examination was satisfactory and the examiners are agreed, after considering the resubmission, that a further oral examination is not required, they may submit their recommendations without re-examining the candidate orally.
43. In the case of a candidate subject to recommendation 37(d) above, the options open to the examiners following the further oral examination shall be those set out in regulations 37(a) or (e) only.

Notes

(i) Forms of application for admission as a candidate and forms to accompany a thesis on submission are available from the relevant graduate school office.

(ii) The University cannot undertake to arrange the examination of a thesis immediately after its submission. Candidates are warned that several weeks may elapse between the submission of their theses and the completion of the examination, and should consult with their main supervisor or internal adviser well in advance.

(iii) Examination Conventions applicable to Staff Candidates for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy by Thesis and Examination Conventions applicable to Staff Candidates for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy on the Basis of Published Work are available from the relevant graduate school office.

P. Guidelines concerning the Submission of Published Work for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy

44. Arts

(a) The number of items and scope of the work submitted should be equivalent to a traditional PhD thesis of about 100,000 words. Since not all of such a thesis will normally be publishable, the published work submitted should normally be approximately 80,000 words in length.

(b) The work submitted should indicate sustained effort within an identified area of study. Within this, the number of pieces of work submitted shall be flexible.

(c) The Doctoral Statement should be between 5,000 and 10,000 words in length.

45. Education

(a) Publications selected for submission by a candidate should demonstrate progressive development or coherence in research activity.

(b) The amount of data collected and analysed and/or the amount of research activity should be equivalent to that expected from a three-year full-time PhD student or a five- to six-year part-time student.

(c) Candidates would normally be expected to submit at least five articles in refereed journals or the equivalent in books, monographs and chapters in books or any combination of these types of publication. When appropriate, one publication may be in a professional journal held in high standing by academics and senior practitioners working in the field.

(d) While it is justifiable for several or all of the publications to result from one piece of research, candidates should not include multiple versions of the same paper in their submission.

(e) The Doctoral Statement should demonstrate the development or coherence in the work across the period covered by the publications and would incorporate a critical appraisal and discussion of the corpus. It would normally be of 3,000-5,000 words in length but could be longer (up to 10,000 words) where the publications submitted did not address all key aspects of the research conducted.

(f) Where the publications submitted have been jointly authored, a form will be submitted detailing the contribution of the candidate to each. The number of articles etc should be increased pro rata if jointly authored publications are submitted.

(g) Candidates who are considering submission under these regulations and guidelines, are strongly advised to discuss the content of the submission early in their preparation with a small group of academic staff appointed to act in this advisory capacity.

46. Law, Environment, and Social Sciences

(a) A submission in Law, Environment, and Social Sciences should normally comprise eight items; papers must either have been published in established, refereed journals, or, up to a maximum of three, may be chapters in edited books. A research monograph/book would count as four papers. All items must have been produced within a minimum of three years and a maximum of six years. In the case of submissions including multi-authored contributions, the percentage of contributions across all submissions should add up to 80 per cent.

(b) The accompanying Doctoral Statement should normally be 5,000 words in total, and a curriculum vita should be appended. The statement should set out the proposed basis for the award of the degree, placing the work in its wider context, particularly drawing out linkages between the different pieces of work.

47. Medicine

(a) The submission should normally be based on at least four original articles in peer reviewed journals and must be based on work in which the candidate has had a major contribution.

(b) The submission should include an introductory section which reviews the relevant literature in the candidate’s field of research and which puts his/her original observations into a broader scientific context. This should normally be at least 10,000 words in length.

48. Science

(a) The submission should normally comprise at least four original articles in peer reviewed journals and should represent a significant contribution to knowledge in the candidate’s field.

(b) The quality of the publications and the impact of the work, rather than the number of publications, will be paramount.

(c) In the case of co-authored publications, evidence of the candidate’s individual contribution will be required.

(d) The Doctoral Statement accompanying the submitted papers should summarize the work, include a literature survey and indicate the context of the work to previously published studies (published papers may tend to gloss over this). Similarly, a critical appraisal of what has been achieved, together with ideas for future work, should be supplied. The Doctoral Statement will typically be equivalent to the introduction, context and conclusion chapters of a canonical thesis (or their equivalent in each discipline), with the rest of the material supplied by the published papers. The Doctoral...
Statement will normally be expected to have a length of ca 50 pages including text and appropriate diagrams.

49. Agriculture and Biological Sciences

(a) Submissions should demonstrate the candidate's original contribution to knowledge and should emphasize the quality of their research. The submission should normally comprise at least four original pieces of work in peer reviewed journals or other significant publications. For coauthored works, the candidate's overall contribution should be greater than 80 per cent across all publications. Where the nature of the research is such that the candidate's contribution to the field has been through a major publication such as a research monograph or book, this can also be considered either singly or in combination with other published material. Without exception, the quality and quantity of the material submitted must be equivalent to that of a PhD thesis awarded under other regulations.

(b) Normally the accompanying Doctoral Statement would be a minimum of 10,000 words and should include a review of the literature which sets the work in its wider context. The Doctoral Statement should also demonstrate the linkages between the different pieces of work and include an overall discussion of the results obtained.

Regulations for the Degrees of Doctor of Letters; Doctor of Engineering; Doctor of Laws; Doctor of Science in Medicine or in Science or in Engineering or in Agriculture and Biological Sciences

1. Candidates for these degrees must either:
   (a) hold a degree of this University (or a degree of the University of Durham, provided that they matriculated in the Newcastle Division of that University before 1 August 1963); or
   (b) be full-time members of the academic staff who have held teaching and/or research appointments in the University on a continuous full-time basis for at least seven years.

2. The degrees are awarded for work which is of high distinction and constitutes a substantial and original contribution to knowledge or scholarship in the candidate's subject. The contributions to knowledge or scholarship must either already be published or accepted for publication.

Note: for the purposes of these regulations, 'published' shall mean published in a periodical, book or report which has been available for criticism by relevant experts. Teaching text books and popular books or articles should not be submitted unless they show considerable originality of material or approach. Translations or patents are not acceptable.

3. Those intending to submit work as a candidate for any of these degrees should, in addition to consulting the Rules for the Submission of Work for Higher Degrees, write to the Academic Registrar for particular advice about the form, arrangement and listing of works to be submitted.

4. The University reserves the right to retain the material submitted by candidates for any of these degrees.

5. Work submitted for any of these degrees shall be examined by two examiners who are not members of the staff of the University.

6. Candidates for these degrees are required to pay a fee for submission. There is no further fee at the time of conferment of the degree.

Rules for the Submission of Work for Higher Degrees

1. These rules apply to all material, whether in the form of a thesis, or of published or unpublished work, submitted for the following degrees: DSc, MD, DLitt, DDS, LLD, DEng, PhD, PhD (Integrated), DBA, EdD, MPhil, MRes, LLM.

2. Where a thesis is required by the regulations for the degree it must be submitted in the form described under Rules for the Form of Theses and must include, as a preface, an abstract of the work, not exceeding 300 words, in a form suitable for publication.

3. Two copies of the thesis must be submitted together with five further copies of the abstract referred to above.

4. The submitted copies of the thesis become the absolute property of the University. If a candidate is successful, one copy of the thesis is deposited in the University Library and is thereafter subject to its regulations and rules. The second copy of the thesis is deposited with the school most concerned with it.

5. Candidates submitting a doctoral thesis must, in addition, submit a separate additional copy of the thesis title page and contents page which, along with one copy of the abstract of the thesis, will be deposited in the British Library Document Supply Centre. Each candidate will normally have to sign a British Library access agreement form.

6. Where work other than a thesis is required, two copies shall be submitted.

7. The copyright in all material submitted for a higher degree remains with the candidate.

8. Candidates must submit a higher degree examination entry form which contains:
   (a) a statement showing whether or not any part of the material offered has previously been submitted by the candidate for a degree (or qualification) in this or any other institution, and if joint work is submitted, what part of it is the candidate's independent contribution;
   (b) a certificate from the supervisor of any candidate required to undertake supervised study that the candidate has satisfactorily completed the required programme;
   (c) a certificate stating that all financial obligations to the University have been fulfilled by the student.

9. Copies of theses or published and unpublished work and accompanying documents for degrees should be sent to the relevant graduate school office.
Rules for the Form of Theses

1. These rules apply to theses submitted for the DDS, MD, DBA, EdD, MRes, MPhil, LLM, PhD or PhD (Integrated) and to unpublished work submitted for the LLD.

2. A candidate is required to submit the thesis in a condition suitable for preservation in the University Library and in conformity with current BSI specifications.

3. When titles of theses quote generic and specific names of living or fossil organisms, these names should obey the appropriate rules of nomenclature, and the higher systematic position of the organisms should be given. When necessary, a shortened version of the title should be printed on the cover of the thesis and the full title should appear on the first appropriate page inside.

4. The texts of theses must be, as far as possible, word processed on A4 paper of good quality. The two volumes to be retained by the University may initially be in either hard-bound or soft-bound form, but the degree will not be awarded until they are bound in a fixed binding of boards with cloth back, or better fixed binding. Each volume must bear the name of the candidate, the title of the thesis, the name of the degree for which the thesis is submitted and the date of submission.

5. Diagrams, maps and similar documents may be submitted in a portfolio of any size and must bear equally the particulars mentioned in (4) above.

Note: a candidate should consult the more detailed information which is available from the Librarian of the University Library and the Academic Registrar's Office as to the proper form of binding for both soft and hard-bound theses.
Here you will find Guidelines and Best Practice advice for research supervisors and research students. In addition to providing what is hoped to be comprehensive guidance, each section ends with an opportunity for Reviewing Practice for those who feel they may benefit from it.

All the Guidelines featured here are important and you are encouraged to look carefully at them.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Content</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Code of Practice for Research Degree Programmes</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Research Training Portfolio</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guidelines for Research Students</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guidelines for Supervisors of Research Students</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guidelines on Good Practice for Research Students</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guidelines on Good Practice in Research Supervision</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>University Handbook for Examiners of Research Degrees by Theses</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standards of Academic Conduct</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guidelines on External Funding – RIS Contributions</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advice for Collaborative Studentships</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What to do when your research nears completion …</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Code of Good Practice in Research</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Newcastle University Code of Practice for Research Degree Programmes

1 Newcastle University is a leading research-intensive university with a distinguished record of advancing knowledge and understanding through the pursuit of research and scholarship. As part of its commitment to research it provides, through its three Graduate Schools, a range of research programmes designed to enable postgraduate students to undertake a research training and to make their own contribution to knowledge and understanding in their subject.

2 The purpose of this Code of Practice is to set out the University’s standards for its research programmes.

3. This Code of Practice will be used by PhDs, MPhils, MDs and the thesis element of any doctorate level programme including Integrated PhDs and Professional Doctorates. Any doctoral programme wishing to be exempt will require UTLC approval.

The Research Environment

4 The University will only permit research programmes to be offered where it is confident that students can be trained and supported within an environment which is supportive of research.

5 It defines such an environment at the subject level in terms of:
- location within a School or research grouping where performance in the 2001 Research Assessment Exercise indicated that the research undertaken was at least of national standing with some at an international standing
- the availability of supervisors with relevant experience and recent publications in students’ project areas;
- facilities for research which at least meet those needed for research of a national standard;
- and acceptable submission rates and completion rates that meet the requirements of the relevant Research Council and as agreed by the Graduate School Committee.

6 In the case of Schools or research groupings which for any reason do not meet the normal criterion the University may, on the advice of the relevant Graduate School, authorise the offering of research degrees where there is evidence that research of at least national standing is being undertaken in the applicants specific subject and that the other conditions set out above have been or will be met.

Pre-Entry Information

7 In order to enable students to make an informed choice, the University requires that units offering research degrees provide clear, accurate and comprehensive pre-entry information to potential applicants. This should inform them as fully as possible about the relevant programme including research opportunities, training, resources, completion times, expectations and demands upon research students (including financial ones), entry requirements, the admissions process, information about scholarships, and appropriate contacts. Pre-entry information should also give relevant information for potential applicants with disabilities and a contact in the Disability Office.

Entry Standards and Applications

8 The University defines the minimum standard for admission to research programmes as normally an Upper Second Class Honours degree in a relevant subject or a relevant Master’s degree. In the case of the MD, the minimum is an MBBS or equivalent medical degree together with appropriate experience. Any subject-specific qualification requirements, should be identified to applicants via the University's prospectus or school research grouping information.

9 In addition, for candidates whose first language is not English, the University requires evidence of acceptable competence in the language to be submitted at the time of application.

10 All applicants are required to submit the names of two recent academic referees or one academic and an industrial employer who can comment knowledgeably upon their suitability for research in the relevant field.

Selection of Research Students

11 In order to assist the match between student, research project, supervisor(s) and institution the University requires that there should be rigorous selection policies and procedures at the Graduate School or, where appropriate, School or subject levels.

12 The University requires that selection policies and procedures be put in writing. These should normally include:
- a policy of involving at least two experienced and research-active academics in the selection process, normally one of whom will form part of the supervisory team and one will act on behalf of the Head of School to approve the offer of a place:
  - who have been informed about selection of research students;
  - who are fully cognisant with University and statutory policies on equal opportunities;
  - who are aware of the support infrastructure for students with special needs.
- a policy of interviewing applicants, where it is deemed appropriate and possible,
- a policy of taking up two references and, if one or more of these is not available at the time of offer, making the latter conditional upon the receipt of satisfactory references
- a statement of selection procedures;
- making decisions on applications promptly and keeping applicants informed during the admissions process.

Letters of Offer

13 Once it has been decided to accept a candidate, a formal offer has to be made, which can only be done by the Graduate School. The letter of offer should be accompanied by: information on fees and any other charges; the broad research topic and the length of study;
arrangements for their supervision; requirements upon them (including attendance, progress reports, contact, enrolment and registration); expectations in terms of academic and social conduct and performance, and requirements; the availability of research training; and direction to other relevant information, e.g. the institutional policy on IPR. Assurance should be sought from the student that he or she has sufficient financial support to complete the degree.

Induction into the University and the Graduate School

14 The University requires Graduate Schools to provide students with an appropriate induction programme within three months of registration to enable them to acquire an understanding of the academic and social environment within which they will be working.

15 The induction programme should include:
- an introduction to the University including
  - its history and development
  - relevant regulations, policies and procedures relating to research degrees.
- induction into matters relating to students' relationship with the institution including:
  - the University's expectations of research students;
  - the challenges typically faced by research students;
  - institutional facilities available to students including the learning support infrastructure;
  - institutional provision for student welfare and other support arrangements;
  - complaints and appeals procedures.
- induction into matters relating to students' relationship with the Graduate School including:
  - nominated contacts for support and advice outside the supervisory team;
  - the specific facilities available to students within the Graduate School including the learning support infrastructure;
  - provision within the Graduate School for student welfare and other support arrangements.
- information about the opportunities to meet other research students and staff and about opportunities to broaden their knowledge through seminars, conferences, forums etc.

16 The University requires that the Graduate Schools annually review the induction programme.

Induction into the Programme

17 The University requires that Schools make appropriate arrangements for induction into the student's programme of study. These should actively involve the designated academic supervisor and include inducting students into:
- the academic standards of the programme;
- the intended learning outcomes;
- the curriculum including the skills training programme and the research element of the individual project;
- methods of teaching and learning;
- assessment;
- regulations governing progression;
- subject-related research codes and ethics;
- programme-related health and safety requirements.

Learning Agreements

18 The University requires Graduate Schools to ensure that students have received, understood, and accepted the expectations of their research programme. The latter should be set out in a formal Learning Agreement, which should be signed by the student and by the supervisor/s on behalf of the University.

The Development of Relevant Knowledge and Skills

19 The University requires that Graduate Schools should ensure that research training programmes offer students the opportunity to develop a relevant range of knowledge and skills, including skills for employment. It requires that the learning outcomes of such programmes are consistent with the JRC skills statement.

20 The University requires that, for individual research students, Schools should make appropriate arrangements:
- to identify their training needs;
- to identify gaps;
- to provide opportunities for development;
- to record the development of skills in a Research Training Portfolio;
- to ensure that students are introduced to relevant academic networks;
- to advise them on opportunities to attend seminars, and conferences;
- to encourage them to present papers;
- where appropriate, to encourage them to publish;
- to support career development.

21 The University requires that there should be appropriate access to formal research training programmes and to individual advice and support for all students, including those who are part-time, have special needs, or who are remote from the institution.

Research Students

22 The University requires that research students should inform their supervisors and the Graduate School administration about any sponsorship they have received for their research projects and obligations in terms of reporting to sponsors on progress.

23 The University requires that research students should attend induction programmes.

24 The University requires that students should indicate that they have received, understood, and accepted the expectations of their doctoral programme by signing a formal Learning Agreement with their supervisor/s within the first three months of their programme starting.

25 The University requires that research students should complete the research training programme and any prescribed taught courses, and successfully complete any assessments and/or examinations.
26 The University requires that research students, in conjunction with the supervisory team, agree a personal skills development programme. This should take into account their prior learning and experience, their needs in terms of study skills, the needs of their research project, and employment related skills. It requires that doctoral students actively seek to acquire relevant skills. This should be reviewed annually with the supervisory team, and the student should maintain an up to date Research Training Portfolio.

27 It requires that research students maintain regular contact with supervisors. The normal requirement for full-time students is that they should meet with the academic supervisor monthly, and attend regular progress meetings with the supervisory team with a minimum frequency of three per year. In cases where the student is not able to meet these requirements because they are studying outside the University, e.g. in another organisation as part of a CASE studentship or undertaking fieldwork, the student is required to agree an equivalent schedule of contacts with the academic supervisor, using for example E-mail and video-conferencing. Part-time students and those students engaged in distance learning should agree the frequency of the formal interactions with their supervisor equivalent to full-time students on a pro-rata basis. The University requires that research students should record and confirm the outcomes of meetings.

28 The University requires the student, with support from the supervisory team, to develop a formal research project proposal for consideration by a School Panel. Where a research project has been approved and funded in advance of the allocation of a student only a project plan and the supervisory team list needs reporting to the Graduate School.

29 The University requires that research students take responsibility for listening to, understanding, and accepting feedback from the supervisory team and the panel.

30 The University requires that students take responsibility for keeping their research project on track so that it is completed within the normal time-scale prescribed by their candidature.

31 It requires that academic problems with the research project should be promptly brought to the attention of the academic supervisor or the supervisory team so that they can provide support. It requires that non-academic problems with a bearing on the progress of the research (e.g. financial, social, domestic, or health problems) should be brought promptly to the attention of the academic supervisor or supervisory team.

32 The University requires that, each year, students prepare a written progress report on the research project and submit it to a review panel. In addition, research students may be asked to provide one or more of the following as specified by their School:
   - submission of a piece of work;
   - give a presentation on their research
   - undergo a viva or interview
   - evidence of research training

33 It requires that research students contribute to the research environment by attending appropriate internal and external events, and give normally one formal presentation per year on their work. The University requires that these events are recorded in the student’s Research Training Portfolio.

34 The University requires that students be responsible for helping to improve research provision by providing feedback and through representation on relevant committees and decision-making bodies.

35 The University requires that research students abide by this Code of Practice. Where a research student does not abide by this Code of Practice the issue will be addressed by the annual Progress Panel or by following the unsatisfactory progress procedures in the University Regulations.

Supervisory Arrangements

36 The University requires that supervision should normally be undertaken by a team consisting of at least two members, both of whom should be demonstrably research active. Where for any reason this is not practical, one supervisor with relevant skills and knowledge is acceptable provided that an independent adviser is appointed to whom the student can refer general academic and pastoral issues.

37 Within the supervisory team, the University requires that one member should be designated as the academic supervisor and this person is responsible for the quality assurance of the research programme. The academic supervisor:
   - must be a member of the staff of the University;
   - must have gained a doctoral degree or have equivalent experience of research;
   - be demonstrably research-active;
   - should normally have had previous experience of at least one successful supervision, whether as ‘academic’ or ‘secondary’ supervisor, defined as taking the student all the way through to a research degree award.

In cases where the academic supervisor does not have such experience, the supervisory team must include another member who is a demonstrably active researcher with experience of at least two successful supervisions.

38 Staff who have not previously supervised research students are required to undergo appropriate initial training and development, while experienced supervisors are strongly encouraged to undertake continuing professional development relevant to the supervisory role.

39 The University requires that Graduate Schools maintain an up to date register of staff who are qualified to engage in research supervision from information provided by the Head of School.

40 The University requires that there are regular structured interactions made available to the student to meet with the academic supervisor at least 10 times per year, normally monthly. In addition, it requires that there should be regular structured interactions with the full supervisory team at least 3 times per year, to report, discuss, and agree academic and personal progress. In cases where the student is not able to meet these requirements for any reason, the academic supervisor is required to agree an equivalent schedule of contacts with the student, using for example E-mail and videoconferencing. For part-time students or those studying their programme by distance learning, regular structured interactions should be agreed that are equivalent to those for full-time student on a pro-rata basis. These formal interactions between student and supervisor should be recorded, preferably in the student’s Research Training Portfolio.

41 The University requires that the maximum period of absence for any member of the supervisory team should not exceed three months, following which appropriate alternative arrangements should be made by the School and reported to the Graduate School to ensure continuity of supervision.
In order to ensure that individual supervisors are not overloaded, the University requires that Graduate Schools set appropriate limits on the numbers of research students who may be supervised by an academic supervisor subject to a normal maximum of 6. Where Heads of Schools allow academic supervisors to take responsibility for more than 6 students, the University requires them to make arrangements to ensure that there will be adequate contact between student and supervisor and that the latter is not overburdened. The Head of School is responsible for ensuring that the overall workload of supervisory staff, including secondary supervisions, is at a level that will allow supervisors to satisfactorily deliver the relevant aspects of the code of practice for their students.

The University requires that the supervisory performance of individual staff is reviewed annually as part of performance development and review.

The University requires that all students have access to confidential advice and support from a nominated contact outside the supervisory team. It requires that Graduate Schools should designate such contacts, which should include the Faculty Postgraduate Tutor and others at School and/or programme level as appropriate, and make this information available to students.

It also requires that all supervisors have access to confidential advice and support from a nominated contact, particularly where they have concerns about a student’s ability or application to the programme. It requires that Schools should designate such a contact, and make this information available to supervisors.

The University requires that all research supervisors adhere to this Code of Practice. Where a supervisor does not adhere to this Code of Practice, the Dean of Postgraduate Studies in consultation with the Head of School has the power to remove the member of staff from the list of approved research supervisors and make alternative arrangements for the supervision of the student. Where the Dean of Postgraduate Studies and Head of School are unable to resolve the supervision the Provost of the Faculty will be consulted on the matter.

Research project proposals may be developed prior to the recruitment of a student for purposes of obtaining funding or subsequently by the student following enrolment or the successful completion of the taught part of the programme.

Where project proposals have already been reviewed and approved by Research Councils, other major research sponsors or appropriate forms of peer review, the University does not require that they are subject to further development or approval. However, a project plan and supervisory team list should still be submitted to the Graduate School for information.

Where the research proposal is developed by the student, the University requires that the supervisory team supports the student in the development of the research project proposal. In particular, the team needs to ensure that the project is achievable within the time-scale of the programme, and to confirm that sufficient resources will be available to support it. The University requires that Graduate Schools should determine appropriate time-scales within which students are required to submit research project proposals, not exceeding 9 months from registration.

The University requires that all research project proposals not previously approved are approved by an independent school panel. It requires that the panel should consist of at least 2 independent members of academic staff with relevant skills and knowledge, at least one of whom should be demonstrably research-active and at least one of whom should have experience of successful supervision.

The University requires the panel to evaluate research proposals against the criteria:

- that the project has clear aims and objectives;
- that the student has (or can acquire) the knowledge, skills, and aptitudes to successfully complete the project;
- that the proposed supervisory team has, or will be able to acquire, the skills, knowledge and aptitudes necessary to supervise the project to a successful conclusion;
- that the project is suitable for the programme of study and for the award;
- that it can be completed within the time-scale for the programme;
- that sufficient resources will be available to complete the project.
- in cases where the project involves extended absence from the University on fieldwork or work in collaborating organisations, that appropriate arrangements will be made to support and monitor the progress of the student.

In order to evaluate these matters, the panel will need evidence in the forms of:

- a research proposal;
- a research plan;
- a supporting statement by the supervisory team.

The panel should consider the evidence and make a written report on the proposals, which should be made available to the student and to the supervisory team. In the event of concerns, the report should indicate the steps necessary to address them. The University requires that Graduate Schools should establish maximum times for the re-submission of proposals, not exceeding 3 months.

When the panel is satisfied on the above matters, it then recommends the research project for approval to the Head of School or nominee. The research project and the supervisory arrangements are then reported to the Graduate School Office. The University requires the Graduate School Office to maintain a Register of approved research topics and of supervisory arrangements.

If the panel does not approve the research project and/or the supervisory arrangements following reassessment of the project approval it will be the annual progress panel that will be required to consider the situation in full and recommend on the outcome for the student.

The Development and Approval of Research Project Proposals

Progression and Monitoring

The University requires that supervisory teams should formally monitor the progress of students on research programmes through annual reports to the progress panel. Where appropriate, reports on progress should be made to sponsors and copied to the Graduate School Office.

But if, at any point during the course of the programme, the supervisory team have concerns about progress, they should inform the student in writing prior to a meeting. At the meeting, the written comments of the team should be discussed with the student, and a plan of action should be agreed along with a review date.
If progress continues to be unsatisfactory, the student should be informed in writing of the reasons and of the possible consequences in terms of being unable to progress, suspension, or termination of registration. The letter should be copied to the Graduate School Office.

57 The University requires that the progress of the student should be formally reviewed annually by the same (or equivalent) panel that approved the research project and the supervisory arrangements. Such reviews should involve a written progress by both the student and supervisory team and possibly include one or more of the following, as specified by their School:
- submission of a piece of work;
- a presentation on their research
- undergo a viva or interview
- evidence of research training

58 Panels should consider the evidence, including annual reports by supervisory teams, and determine whether progress indicates that the research project will meet the standards for the award.

59 If this criterion is met, the panel should recommend that, in the case of a student registered initially as a candidate-elect, he or she should have their candidature confirmed at the end of the first year, or that their registration should be continued.

60 If this criterion is not met, the panel should indicate what the student and, where appropriate, the supervisory team must do to put the research project back on track. It should set a date for further review within a period prescribed by the Graduate School, and not exceeding two months.

61 Panels should provide a written report to the Graduate School who will provide copies to the research student and the supervisory team. In the event of the panel being unable to make a recommendation to progress, the student and the supervisory team should determine an action plan to ensure that the research project will meet the standards of the award by the date set for further review.

62 If necessary, the panel should re-convene on the date set and consider whether progress has been such that the research project will meet the standards for the award. Where the evidence has demonstrated this, the panel should recommend confirmation of candidature or continuation as appropriate.

63 Where the evidence does not demonstrate that the research project will meet the standards for the award, the panel’s recommendations will depend upon its judgement of the reasons in terms of the potential of the student to achieve the standards and the adequacy and appropriateness of supervisory arrangements.

64 Where the panel is not satisfied that supervisory arrangements are adequate and appropriate, but considers that the student would otherwise be able to achieve the standards of the award, it may seek the approval of the Head of School to make a recommendation to the Dean of Postgraduate Studies for the replacement of all or part of the supervisory team.

65 Where it is satisfied that supervisory arrangements are adequate and appropriate but that the student is unlikely to be able to achieve the standards for the award, it may recommend that the student be registered for a lower degree where he or she is likely to be able to achieve the standards or, if students cannot meet the standards for those awards, that their registration be terminated.

66 Although the final decision with respect to any recommendation made by the school is taken by the Dean of Postgraduate Studies, a school may give provisional feedback to the students after the annual progress panel have met.

Examination

67 The regulations of the University require that all research degrees are examined by two examiners, one internal and one external (except in the case of staff candidates where both examiners are external).

68 The University requires that examiners should be demonstrably research-active in relevant fields. Examiners should be independent of the project and otherwise meet the criteria set out in the University's Handbook for Examiners of Research Degrees. Members of the supervisory team are explicitly excluded from acting as examiners.

69 The University requires that Heads of Schools should be responsible for the nomination of examiners for research degrees. Heads of Schools should consult the supervisory team about possible nominees, and the supervisory team should offer the student the chance to comment.

70 Nominations should be made to the Postgraduate Dean of the Faculty. He or she should check that the examiners meet the requirements set out above and, if so, approve them on behalf of Senate.

71 Once nominations have been approved, the Graduate School Office should be notified and send a letter of appointment along with relevant information including institutional assessment criteria for the award and the University’s Handbook for Examiners of Research Degrees.

72 The supervisor should agree in writing the date, time and place with the examiners and candidate and notify the Graduate School Office. Candidates should be asked whether or not they wish to have a supervisor present in the viva as a non-contributing observer (unless asked to contribute by the chair). If not present, the academic supervisor should be available for consultation.

73 The University requires the supervisory team to advise the student on preparation for the viva and where practical to offer at least one practice session.

74 The University requires that, prior to the viva, examiners make preliminary written independent reports on the thesis, which should be sent to the Graduate School Office.

75 The University requires that vivas should be chaired by the external examiner and conducted in accordance with the procedures set out in the Handbook for Examiners of Research Degrees. When there are two external examiners appointed there should be an Independent Chair of the examination meeting.

76 Following the viva, the University requires that examiners write a joint report (except in cases where they disagree when they should write separate reports) and make an appropriate recommendation in respect of the award. Where the recommendation is re-submission, the report should include a statement of the work to be done to achieve the award within the period allowed under the University’s regulations.

77 As well as reporting on the thesis and the candidate, examiners should be requested to provide comments on the broader issues of the research training skills and the research environment.
The examiners’ report should be sent to the Graduate School Office for the information of the Dean of Postgraduate Studies. The Graduate School Office will send copies to the student and the the supervisory team.

Feedback Mechanisms

79 The University requires that Graduate Schools establish and operate confidential mechanisms for research students to feed back on the quality of their learning experiences. Such mechanisms should include: a questionnaire administered within 3 months of enrolment and asking about recruitment, admission and induction procedures; questionnaire evaluations of the research skills training programme; an annual survey (questionnaires and/or focus groups); exit questionnaires and/or interviews about the totality of the learning experience.

80 Graduate Schools should also actively seek feedback from other stakeholders, including supervisory teams, review panels, examiners, funders, collaborative organisations, employers and alumni.

81 Feedback from these should be considered by Graduate Schools and, where appropriate, acted upon.

Complaints

82 The University has established procedures for complaints about a service, member of staff, or another student. A complaint may be made by any student, including a research student. Details of the complaints procedure are set out in the Handbook for Research Supervisors and Students given to all research students and on the University’s Web site (see www.ncl.ac.uk/spo).

83 The University requires that, before having recourse to the complaints procedure, a student should attempt to resolve a problem with the individual(s) concerned or consult the personal tutor, research supervisor or advisor. Head of School, Graduate School, or Dean of Postgraduate Studies for help and advice. Only when these steps have failed or when the student has good cause for not pursuing them should the complaints procedure be invoked.

Appeals

84 The University has established procedures for appeal against a recommendation by examiners of research degrees. Details of the appeals procedure are set out in the Handbook for Research Supervisors and Students and on the University Web site (see www.ncl.ac.uk/spo).

The purpose of the Research Training Portfolio is to provide a record of your personal development at the University of Newcastle. The portfolio is designed to assist you to get the most from your postgraduate experience, helping you to plan and reflect upon your research and how it will relate to future aspirations. It will help you to identify areas of strength and those areas you feel need more attention. By completing your portfolio you will be able to build on the learning and results you achieve, which will provide an ongoing record that can contribute towards your personal growth and career planning. The portfolio is intended to help you understand how your learning can be applied to a wide range of subjects and activities. It will help to improve your research and generic skills and identify opportunities for personal development.

Your portfolio will include relevant information on the following:

• Research Programme
• Personal Development Plan (PDP)

This portfolio is a means of planning/ developing and recording both research and generic skills and should be viewed as a serious method for your Continuing Professional Development (CPD). You will be responsible for the generation and maintenance of your portfolio, for which you will be expected to show commitment, planning, action and evaluation/reflection.

1. Why keep a portfolio?

The introduction of personal development portfolios for CPD has shown an overall positive effect and all members of staff and students are now encouraged to maintain one, primarily because it allows individuals to be ‘in charge’ of their own development. The portfolio will also:

• Provide a record of your personal and academic development
• Record the acquisition of skills and self-development, which will be useful for CV preparation
• Help you to understand and learn from ‘life’ experiences and how these can contribute towards your future prospects by providing examples of skill developments
• Allow opportunities for reflection and self-evaluation on your progress and future needs
• Introduce the concept of continuous professional development
• Help you to demonstrate and be aware of that ‘something extra’ which future employers value

2. Research Degree Programme

This aspect of your portfolio will include a research proposal and plan (including a supporting statement from your supervisory team, where necessary). It is also important that you are aware of regulations and formalities regarding your research degree programme. An induction checklist has been included for your guidance (APPENDIX A), please ensure that you discuss these regulations/formalities with your supervisor during your first formal meeting and keep a copy of this record within your portfolio.

2.1 Research Proposal

If your research proposal has already been developed prior to your recruitment and has been agreed and funded by a research sponsor/ funding body, then it does not require further development or approval. However, if the proposal is developed by you the researcher (e.g. self-
funding individuals, overseas government funding etc) it will need to be approved by a panel appointed by the Graduate School to ensure that the project is achievable within the time-scales and to confirm that sufficient resources are available. If there are any modifications to your proposal, please keep a record of these changes. It is your responsibility to ensure that you have a research proposal agreed either previously by a sponsor/ funding body or by the Graduate School.

Keep a copy of your research proposal in your portfolio, with a record of any approved changes.

2.2 Research Plan

A research plan (APPENDIX B) must be completed for your studies and updated on a regular basis as discussed and agreed with your supervisory team. It is your responsibility to ensure that your research project is completed on time. Regular structured contact with your main supervisor (12 or 6 times per year minimum for full-time or part-time individuals, respectively) or supervisory team (3 or 2 times per year minimum for full-time or part-time individuals, respectively) to discuss academic and personal progress will help you to meet your targets. If your research proposal is to be agreed by a panel appointed by the Graduate School an in depth plan will be required that meets the ‘Code of Practice’ for ‘The Development and Approval of Research Project Proposals’ and will need to include a supporting statement from your supervisory team. In addition, progress reports for sponsors should also be copied and sent to the Graduate School Office. Throughout your studies, you will be monitored by your supervisory team, keep a record of formal supervisory meetings by completing the appropriate form (APPENDIX C).

Keep a record of your research plan with progress updates and supervisory meetings in your Portfolio.

2.3. Annual Assessments/Reviews

Each individual will have a formal annual assessment/ review by a panel, who will submit a progress report to the Graduate School Office. Timescales for annual assessments will vary depending on your Faculty; but will follow a similar format described later (section 3.3). Assessments will involve one or more of the following: a written progress report, a project presentation and viva by the panel, or an open presentation with critical feedback. Please consult your Faculty Graduate School Handbook on the requirements for your Annual Assessments. The panel will assess evidence and decide whether suitable progress indicates your research project will meet the standards of the award. If necessary, action may be taken and another review date set.

Keep a record of your research programme assessment presentations, formal meetings and feedback in your Portfolio.

Keeping records about your research programme will help you to continually assess, plan and meet the needs of your research project and research degree requirements. It may also be useful to complete a project specific skill form (APPENDIX D), to help you focus on research project issues, which will assist with project planning and supervisory meetings.

3. Personal Development Plan (PDP)

The Learning and Teaching Support Network defines personal development planning (PDP) as ‘a structured and supported process undertaken by an individual to reflect upon their own learning, performance and/ or achievement and to plan for their personal, educational and career development’. Jackson, N. (2001) Personal Development Planning: What Does it Mean?, PDP Working Paper 1, Learning and Teaching Support Network Generic Centre. (www.ltsn.ac.uk/application.asp?app=resources.asp&process=full_rec ord&section=generic&id=65)

The PDP will help to highlight areas of strengths and areas for improvement by mapping your current skills against the ‘skills training requirements for research students’ a joint statement by the Research Councils (RCs)/ Arts Higher Research Board (AHRB). This will be achieved by completing the self assessment audit and PDP in APPENDIX E and should be updated at appropriate times during your research. The PDP should be agreed in conjunction with your supervisory team and signed accordingly.

The purpose of the portfolio is to record your skills progress, based upon your PDP, and assessors will want to see evidence of this. Each individual is responsible for their own Research Training Portfolio and should ensure it is up-to-date. The portfolio should include a description of the skills developed and the corresponding skill/ technique within the joint statement of the RCs/ AHRB training requirements. Records can be kept in the form of a diary, learning log, journal or whichever means is most convenient. The professional standard for recording your skills development are set out in APPENDICES F-I and can be used as a guideline if you want to keep a more personalised/ detailed record. The following is a list of ‘essentials’ that must be recorded in the RTP:

- Lab meetings, seminars, conferences attended (including questions asked), N.B. Postgraduate researchers are required to contribute to the research environment by attending appropriate internal and external events (APPENDIX F)
- Training attended including faculty training courses (IT, library, safety etc, APPENDIX G)
- Abstracts presented at local, national and international meetings with other relevant information (poster, oral presentation, presenting author etc), N.B. You are required to give at least one formal presentation per year on your work (APPENDIX H)
- Publications, including manuscripts in press and abstracts where published (APPENDIX I)
- Work experience and other information relevant to your future career (teaching/ demonstrating, work placements with industry/ business etc, time spent within other academic institutions, APPENDIX J)

3.1 What Skills?

The following is a summary of the skills defined by the RCs/ AHRB joint statement www.grad.ac.uk/gradschool/downloads/rdf_report/rdp_framework_g.pdf that you are expected to develop over your research degree. Some of the skills areas will overlap:

- A 1-6. Research Skills and Techniques (carrying out research effectively)
- B 1-7. Research Environment (awareness of issues regarding research practice)
- C 1-4. Research Management (using information, producing and interpreting data)
- D 1-7. Personal Effectiveness (developing and identifying personal and skills opportunities)
- E 1-5. Communication Skills (communicating effectively in oral and written formats)
- F 1-3. Networking and Team working (working as part of a team and networking with others)
- G 1-4. Career management (continual professional and career development)

In conjunction with the skills above, the University encourages you to: develop relevant academic networks, attend seminars and conferences, present papers, publish papers, support your own career development, and contribute to your research environment by attending appropriate internal and external events.

3.2 Creating a PDP

To create a PDP you will need to assess your skills abilities, following this identify your specific needs/ skills gaps and then decide what form of training can be used to
meet these needs. Training can be both formal (courses/workshops) and informal (supervisor/research colleagues) and can include aspects of your research i.e. attending seminars, conferences etc. At appropriate stages during your studies, you will be expected to audit your skills and update your PDP. Your RTP should be continually updated with information on seminars attended etc. By setting goals and targets in your PDP it can keep you focussed on developing your skills. Continual reviewing and reflection will help you to determine whether you are effectively meeting these goals. The diagram below represents the CPD process. However it can be used in the RTP process.

1. **Identify goals** – Completing your research degree and meeting the training requirements of the RCs/AHRB joint statement
2. **Determine the skills required** - Assess your skills according to statements in APPENDIX E and note areas where you need to develop or learn a new skill/technique
3. **Plan to achieve development goals** - Set targets for your development and seek opportunities to develop your skills (create a PDP)
4. **Record Training** - Build a record of your skills achievement and skills profile
5. **Evaluate and Review** – At each stage of your research determine whether you are making progress towards your goals and re-evaluate your skills

### 3.3 Timescales: When to use your RTP

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Degree</th>
<th>Induction (months)</th>
<th>1st Review (months)</th>
<th>2nd Review (months)</th>
<th>3rd Review (months)</th>
<th>Submission (months)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PhD (1 yr ft)</td>
<td>0-3</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>12-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PhD (2 yr pt)</td>
<td>0-3</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>24-36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MD/DDS (2 yr pt)</td>
<td>0-3</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>24-36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MD/DDS (1 yr ft &amp; 2 yr pt)</td>
<td>0-3</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>36-48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MD/DDS (4 yr pt)</td>
<td>0-3</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>48-60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MPhil (3 yr ft)</td>
<td>0-3</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>36-48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MPhil (1 yr ft &amp; 3 yr pt)</td>
<td>0-3</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>48-60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MPhil (5 yr pt)</td>
<td>0-3</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>45/57+</td>
<td>60-72</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Alternatively, set your own timescales

Please remember the generic/transferable skills aspect of your portfolio is not a test – it is your assessment of your development. It will be assessed but only on a satisfactory/unsatisfactory basis.

4. **Feedback**

To assist and improve the provision and quality of your training it is important to provide feedback to your Graduate School. A feedback form can be found on the internet/Blackboard for your completion. At each formal assessment the panel will also discuss barriers/recommendations for self-development and training; if necessary this will be documented and returned to the Graduate School.

The following forms are samples of those that you will be asked to complete to make up your own research portfolio. These can be found at the following web page: www.ncl.ac.uk/spo/pgradmin/. However, you are encouraged to use the on-line version called the ePortfolio which provides an easy format for storage and access via the following link:

http://pf-postgrad.ncl.ac.uk/eportfolio
Appendix A: Induction Checklist

You should discuss the following key issues with your supervisor at your first formal meeting.

It is your responsibility to ensure that with your supervisor you have/ are: 

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TICK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Reviewed the relevant degree regulations
- Reviewed the guidelines for research students and research supervisors
- Discussed and signed the formal Learning Agreement
- Discussed the overall timetable for your programme and its completion
- Noted constraints other than time (e.g. costs, equipment availability)
- Agreed and are aware of the importance of completing on time
- Considered and noted the requirements for Induction and other formal training
- Reviewed relevant safety procedures and responsibility for compliance
- Aware of other relevant members of staff, particularly assessors
- Discussed the standard of work expected (degree regulations, successful theses)
- Discussed good practice in storage/maintenance of results, research protocols etc
- Been given preliminary guidance about relevant literature and other information sources
- Discussed the importance of publication and authorship of publications
- Aware of issues of plagiarism and fabrication of results
- Reviewed participation in meetings of learned societies and details of conferences
- Reviewed faculty assessment procedures
- Agreed a programme of regular supervisory meetings
- Aware of the need to maintain your Research Training Portfolio
- Aware of the monitoring and evaluation processes if progress of your research degree is unsatisfactory or does not meet the required standard for the award

It is important that you are aware of and have discussed the following items:

1. The University’s general guidelines which explain the student / supervisor relationship and the respective responsibilities of both individuals.
2. The periodical assessments of progress (APPENDIX B).
3. The system for recording meetings with your supervisor(s) (APPENDIX C).
4. The Research Training Portfolio for planning and recording activities/ achievements whilst a postgraduate researcher at the University of Newcastle.
Research Program Supervisory Communications/ Meetings

It is important that you have regular contact with your supervisor(s). This should be more than a brief discussion and should be additional to your day-to-day progress. You will need to keep a record of formal communications/meetings within your portfolio.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name:</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Date:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Supervisory Team:**

- **Supervisor 1:**
- **Supervisor 2:**

**Record of Communication/ Meeting:**

(e.g. completed work matched against last agreed actions, supervisors view of progress, issues/topics discussed, resource needs identified, usefulness of training received)

**Agreed actions with dates/ or modifications to Research Proposal.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date of next appointment:</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Candidate</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Signed:..........................</td>
<td>Supervisor(s) Signed:..........................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date:..........................</td>
<td>Date:..........................</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Appendix D: Self-Reflection of Project Specific Skills

All research programmes differ from one another and you may need to develop skills particular to your area of research. Understanding the aims of your research and identifying the specific techniques you need to apply are fundamental to the success of your research degree. Re-visit your responses to this section at various stages throughout your research and assess your ability in each specific technique you use.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date:</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- **What are you setting out to do?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date:</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- **Why are you attempting to do this?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date:</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- **Are you aware of previous research in this area?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date:</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- **What contribution will your research make to the academic community?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date:</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- **What techniques are you applying to your research? And at what level are you? Novice, competent, expert? (include techniques you want to develop)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date:</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- **How do you know the techniques are the most appropriate?**
The Research Councils (RCs) and the Arts and Humanities Research Board (AHRB) play an important role in setting standards and identifying best practice in research training. The following self-assessment sets out a joint statement of the skills that individuals would be expected to develop during their research training. These skills may be present on commencement, explicitly taught, or developed during the course of the research. It is expected that different mechanisms will be used to support learning as appropriate, including self-direction, supervisor support and mentoring, departmental/ school support, workshops, conferences, elective training courses, formally assessed courses and informal opportunities.

All skills described are appropriate to postgraduate research and therefore a level of awareness (see below) should be achieved for all the skills described. How each skill is developed and to what level will be up to the individual, however it is important that evidence of continual improvement is presented at assessment.

How to use the self-assessment skills audit and PDP

The self-assessment form is divided into 3 sections; the first section describes the skills/ techniques that you are expected to obtain, the second section is for self-assessment of your skills (see skill levels below) and the third section is your personal development plan (PDP).

Mark each statement according to your skill level (it is suggested that you enter the date of assessment). Following self-assessment of your skills/ techniques, decide which ones you would like to develop and describe how you intend on achieving this, the third section will be the basis of your PDP. Consult with your supervisor(s), who will be able to advise you of appropriate training, if you are unsure. Following agreement of your PDP with your supervisor(s) please sign the form at the end of the self-assessment skills audit.

At appropriate stages of your research perform the self-assessment, and update the original form accordingly. You will soon start to see evidence of progress when your skill levels increase.

Skill Level:

0  Unaware. At this stage you think that a skill/ technique might be of use to you but you don’t know anything about it.

1.  Aware. At this point you are learning about the skill/ technique, perhaps by going on a training course, reading a book on it or informally from your supervisor or research colleagues.

2.  Informed. Now you are ready to look for suitable opportunities, where appropriate, to put this into practice, but it will take conscious effort to use the new skill/ technique.

3.  Capable. You are now using the new skill/ technique routinely, and are consciously aiming to improve by other methods.

4.  Recognised. The people around you recognise the change in skill level and you are now so practised that the skill has moved from your conscious level to the subconscious.

### (A) Research skills and techniques:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Level</th>
<th>PDP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Please describe how you intend to develop/ are developing these skills</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I can recognise and validate problems.

2. I can demonstrate original, independent and critical thinking, and the ability to develop theoretical concepts.

3. I have a knowledge of recent advances within my field and in related areas.

4. I understand relevant research methodologies and techniques and their appropriate application within my research field.

5. I am able to critically analyse and evaluate my findings and those of others.

6. I am able to summarise, document, report and reflect on progress.

Skill Level: 0 – Unaware, 1 – Aware, 2 – Informed, 3- Capable, 4 - Recognised.
### (B) Research environment:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Level</th>
<th>PDP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I have a broad understanding of the context, at the national and international level, in which research takes place.

2. I am aware of issues relating to the rights of other researchers, of research subjects, and of others who may be affected by the research (e.g. confidentiality, ethical issues, attribution, copyright, malpractice, ownership of data and the requirements of the Data Protection Act).

3. I appreciate and apply the standards of good research practice in my institution and/or discipline.

4. I understand relevant health and safety issues and demonstrate responsible working practices.

5. I understand the processes for funding and evaluation of research.

6. I can justify the principles and techniques used in my research.

7. I understand the process of academic or commercial exploitation of research results.

Skill Level: 0 – Unaware, 1 - Aware, 2 – Informed, 3- Capable, 4 - Recognised.

---

### (C) Research management:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Level</th>
<th>PDP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I manage projects effectively through the setting of research goals, intermediate milestones and prioritisation of activities.

2. I can design and execute systems for the acquisition and collation of information through the effective use of appropriate resources and equipment.

3. I can identify and access appropriate bibliographical resources, archives, and other sources of relevant information.

4. I can use information technology appropriately for database management, recording and presenting information.

Skill Level: 0 – Unaware, 1 - Aware, 2 – Informed, 3- Capable, 4 - Recognised.
### (D) Personal effectiveness:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Level</th>
<th>PDP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I have a willingness and ability to learn and acquire knowledge.

2. I am creative, innovative and original in my approach to research.

3. I am flexible and open-minded.

4. I am self-aware and able to identify my own training needs.

5. I am self-disciplined, motivated, and thorough.

6. I recognise boundaries and draw upon/ use sources of support as appropriate.

7. I show initiative, work independently and am self-reliant.

**Skill Level:** 0 – Unaware, 1 - Aware, 2 – Informed, 3- Capable, 4 - Recognised.

---

### (E) Communication skills:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Level</th>
<th>PDP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I can write clearly and in a style appropriate to purpose (e.g. progress reports, published documents, thesis).

2. I can construct coherent arguments and articulate ideas clearly to a range of audiences, formally and informally through a variety of techniques.

3. I can constructively defend research outcomes at seminars and viva examination.

4. I contribute to promoting the public understanding of my research field.

5. I effectively support the learning of others when involved in teaching, mentoring or demonstrating activities.

**Skill Level:** 0 – Unaware, 1 - Aware, 2 – Informed, 3- Capable, 4 - Recognised.
### Networking and teamwork:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Level</th>
<th>PDP</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. I am developing and maintaining co-operative networks and working relationships with supervisors, colleagues and peers, within the institution and the wider research community.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. I understand my behaviour and impact on others when working in and contributing to the success of formal and informal teams.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. I listen, give and receive feedback and respond perceptively to others.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Skill Level: 0 – Unaware, 1 - Aware, 2 – Informed, 3- Capable, 4 - Recognised.

### Career management:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Level</th>
<th>PDP</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. I appreciate the need for and show commitment to continued professional development.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. I take ownership for and manage my career progression, set realistic and achievable career goals, and identify and develop ways to improve employability.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. I can demonstrate an insight into the transferable nature of research skills to other work environments and the range of career opportunities within and outside academia.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. I can present my skills, personal attributes and experiences through effective CVs, applications and interviews.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Skill Level: 0 – Unaware, 1 - Aware, 2 – Informed, 3- Capable, 4 - Recognised.
**PDP Agreement**

Please date and sign the following table following creation/revision of your PDP and agreement with your supervisor:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date PDP created/ revised</th>
<th>Date PDP Agreed</th>
<th>Students Signature</th>
<th>Supervisor(s) signature(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Meetings attended

You should record details of any research meetings, workshops, seminars and conferences (national or international) that you have attended (include whether you offered contribution e.g. asking questions). It may also be useful to record what was gained by attending the meeting. For presentations see APPENDIX H.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Meeting</th>
<th>Venue and date</th>
<th>Other relevant information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Training courses attended

You should keep an accurate record of training courses and workshops that you attend throughout your research programme. This information can be very useful in producing references and will provide you with a formal record of the 'added value' and 'transferable skills' elements of your training. Where appropriate have your attendance confirmed by the course provider.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Authorised</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Presentations**

You should record all informal and formal presentations; this can be at a research group, school, faculty, national and/or international level. Include information on how the research was presented (oral/poster etc). For formal presentations you should identify whether you were invited to present and if your abstract was peer reviewed etc. It may be useful to record feedback and questions asked about your presentation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Meeting</th>
<th>Venue and dates</th>
<th>Feedback/ other relevant information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Publications**

You are strongly advised to develop your research programme with a view to producing good quality publications. You should include with this record copies of abstracts, published works and manuscripts in press.

**Other relevant information**

Include here any other information you feel is not covered elsewhere in this record such as work placements with industry/business, time spent in other academic institutions, demonstrating, teaching duties etc.
Guidelines for Research Students

1. These Guidelines describe the essential elements of student/supervisor, student/University relationships and detail the minimum requirements that a student will be expected to comply with during his/her programme of work.

2. At the commencement of your proposed programme of work you must have a detailed discussion with your supervisor. You need to have received, understood, and accepted the expectations of your research programme. Following this discussion a formal Learning Agreement should be signed by the student and by the academic supervisor or supervisors. This Learning Agreement will be copied, one copy of which should be retained in your Research Training Portfolio (RTP) and one copy sent to your Graduate School to be placed in your student file. You should ensure that the meeting takes place and that following points are covered in the discussion:
   (a) the scope of your proposed programme of work and an initial definition of the subject of study with particular emphasis on:
      (i) the importance of completing the programme in the time available;
      (ii) the standard of work that will be expected from you (you would be well advised to read successful theses available in the Library as a guide to what is expected);
   this should form the basis of your project proposal which will need to be approved before your Candidature is confirmed
   (b) the overall timetable for the planning and completion of your programme of work, including any period of preliminary reading and the writing of the thesis. This should be recorded in the Personal Development Plan (PDP) within the Research Training Portfolio (RTP);
   (c) any programme of training and guidance in research methods, again listed in the RTP;
   (d) guidance about the use of literature, other sources of information, including other members of staff, and about attendance at appropriate courses and meetings of learned societies;
   (e) good practice in relation to the storage and retention of research data;
   (f) constraints, other than time, which may affect your programme of work, such as costs and the need to design and build equipment;
   (g) a programme of regular meetings with your supervisor to monitor your progress and to review the details of the overall timetable for the programme of work;
   (h) the submission of written work and/or the presentation of seminar papers while your research is in progress and the possibility of presenting work at meetings of learned societies and/or of submitting it for publication directly.
   (i) If your studentship has any formal sponsorship you must discuss with your supervisor the terms and conditions relating to such sponsorship, and ensure that you understand them.

3. You will be expected to maintain regular contact with your supervisor, to seek his/her advice on the planning of your work and other matters including the use of suitable techniques. You will also be required to present written work as appropriate. It will also be your responsibility to raise any problems and difficulties you think should be drawn to the attention of your supervisor. This includes any factors – domestic, social, financial or health factors – which you believe may have an effect upon your progress.

4. If you are following a research programme which will take more than one year to complete (e.g. full-time PhD, Integrated PhD, Professional Doctorate or any part-time research degree), your progress will be formally monitored through annual reports. Supervisory teams will monitor progress and report to an independent school panel which will use evidence from a variety of sources to determine whether each individual student’s progress is satisfactory for the award in the time available. Therefore, you will be required by your supervisor to produce at least one substantial piece of work (e.g. literature review, experimental write-up), in order to help assess your ability to proceed successfully through the subsequent years of your programme. You may be required to make a presentation of this work to other staff and/or students.

5. Approximately once a month you will have a formal meeting with your supervisor(s) to review progress at which the details of your discussions need recording within the RTP.

6. Students who are pursuing a course of study without a previously approved project should, within the guidelines identified by the Graduate School, submit a project proposal for approval. Progression on the programme will be dependent upon acceptance of the project proposal by an independent school panel.

7. Candidates for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy will normally be approved conditionally. Conditional approval shall be subject to you being admitted initially as a candidate-elect. Doctoral candidature status will be confirmed provided satisfactory progress is made (usually within 12 months, see University Regulations) and the relevant school progress panel so recommend.

8. Each year your supervisor will be required to submit an annual report on the progress of your work. This report will take into account the review requirements as detailed by your school.

9. Each year you will also be required to submit an annual report on your progress and evidence of achievement as specified by your school. You will be provided with a standard form for this purpose.

http://www.ncl.ac.uk/spo/pgradmin/Annual_progression.html

10. The Report Form you submit will be forwarded to a school panel which will consider the evidence, including the annual report from your supervisory team, and determine whether progress indicates that the research project will meet the standards for the award. The Progress Panel will make a report to the dean of postgraduate studies via the Graduate School, and further progress on the programme of study is subject to approval by the Dean. In addition to detailed feedback that the Progress Panel may wish to provide to you and the supervisory team, the Progress Panel will make one of the following recommendations to the Graduate School:

   1. That the candidate’s performance is satisfactory and that the candidate can proceed to the next stage. If the candidate is a stage 1 student the candidature to study for the Doctor of Philosophy is confirmed;
   2. That notwithstanding some concerns, which the candidate and supervisory team should note, the candidate’s overall performance is satisfactory and that the candidate can proceed to the next stage. If the candidate is a stage 1 student the candidature to study for the Doctor of Philosophy is confirmed;
   3. That the candidate’s performance is unsatisfactory and that a further assessment should be held within two months to determine whether progress on the programme will be recommended;
   4. That the candidate’s performance is unsatisfactory and that a submission for a Master of Philosophy examination is recommended instead of a submission for a Doctor of Philosophy examination;
   5. That the candidate’s performance is unsatisfactory and that no submission for a Master of Philosophy or Doctor of Philosophy examination is recommended,
and that the student’s candidature be terminated.

11. If at any stage throughout the period of study you feel that the standard of supervision that you are receiving is inadequate or that you are unable to establish an effective working relationship with your supervisor, and it has not proved possible to resolve these difficulties in discussion with your supervisor, school director of postgraduate studies/tutor or head of school, you should inform the relevant Graduate School Administrator or the Head of the Student Progress Section, without delay. The annual report form will also offer an opportunity for you to raise such issues.

12. You are required to maintain high standards of academic conduct and, in particular, to avoid conduct amounting to the fabrication of research results or plagiarism. (See the Standard of Academic Conduct and the Code of Good Practice in Research, later in this part of the Handbook.)

(a) The fabrication of research results includes: claims, which cannot reasonably be justified, to have obtained specific or general results; false claims in relation to experiments, interviews, procedures or any other research activity; and the omission of statements in relation to data, results, experiments, interviews or procedures, where such omission cannot reasonably be justified.

(b) Plagiarism is the unacknowledged use of another person’s ideas, words or work. At one extreme, plagiarism is simply a form of cheating, such as where the whole or a significant part of work submitted towards an examination for degree is the unacknowledged work of another, copied slavishly from a book, research paper or electronic sources such as the internet. At the other extreme, plagiarism may occur accidentally, through poor standards of scholarship, or may concern insignificant parts of submitted work.

(c) You may be unclear as to what use may be made of work of others in the field without raising concerns about plagiarism. If you are in doubt on this matter, you should consult your supervisor. In most cases, the adoption of appropriate standards of scholarship will avoid such concerns. The following general guidelines may assist you:

(i) passages copied verbatim from the work of another must be enclosed in quotation marks. A full reference to the original source must be provided. The substitution of a few words in an otherwise verbatim passage will not obviate the need to use quotation marks and to provide a full reference;

(ii) you must always give due acknowledgment to the sources of ideas or data which are not yours and are not truly in the public domain (for example, because they are novel or controversial) or are not widely accepted or widely recognized;

(iii) ideas and data which are your own or are truly in the public domain may be included without attribution, but should be expressed in your own words;

(iv) you must take care to distinguish between your own ideas or work and those of others. Any ambiguity in such a distinction could give rise to a suspicion of plagiarism;

(v) where your work is the result of collaborative research, you must take care to acknowledge the source of data, analysis or procedures which are not your own.

13. The retention of accurate and contemporaneous records of primary experimental data and results is of the utmost importance for the progress of academic enquiry. You should maintain these records in a form that will provide clear and unambiguous answers to questions concerning the validity of the data or the conduct of your work that might arise at a later date. Such questions can arise during the course of subsequent investigations by you, your colleagues, and others; accurate contemporaneous records are invaluable when this happens. In addition, errors detected following publication of experimental or other research results could be mistaken for misconduct if you cannot provide an accurate record of the primary data. It is important that you and your work should be protected from such misunderstanding.

The following guidelines will assist you in this regard:

(a) Records of primary experimental data and results should always be made using indeleble materials. Pencils or other easily erasable materials must not be used. Where primary research data and results are recorded on audio or video tape (e.g. interviews), the tape housing should be labeled as set out in (d) below.

(b) Complete and accurate records of experimental data and results should be made on the day they are obtained and the date should be indicated clearly in the record. When possible, records should be made in a hard-backed, bound notebook in which the pages have been numbered consecutively.

(c) Pages should never be removed from notebooks containing records of research data. If any alterations are made to records at a later date they should be noted clearly as such and the date of the alteration should be indicated.

(d) Machine printouts, photographs, tapes and other such records should always be labelled with the date and with an identifying reference number. This reference number should be clearly recorded in the notebook referred to above, along with other relevant details, on the day the record is obtained. If possible, printouts, photographs, tapes and other such record should be affixed to the notebook. When this is not possible (eg for reasons of size or bulk), such records should be maintained in a secure location in the University for future reference. When a ‘hard copy’ of computer-generated primary data is not practicable, the data should be maintained in two separate locations within the University, on disk, tape or other format.

(e) When photographs and other such records have been affixed to the notebook, their removal at a later date for the purpose of preparing copies or figures for a thesis or other publication should be avoided. If likely to be needed, two copies of such records should be made on the day the record is generated. If this is not practicable, then the reason for removing the original copy and the date on which this is done should be recorded in the notebook, together with a replacement copy or the original if this can be re-affixed to the notebook.

(f) Custody of all original records of primary research data must be retained by the principal investigator, who will normally be the supervisor of the research group, laboratory or other forum in which the research is conducted. An investigator may make copies of the primary records for his or her own use, but the original records should not be removed from the custody of the principal investigator. The principal investigator is responsible for the preservation of these records for as long as there is any reasonable need to refer to them, and in any event for a minimum period of 10 years.

14. Your supervisor will advise you on the manuscript of your thesis in general and on content, presentation and organization. However, he/she will not act as proof reader. While he/she may read all or part of the first draft of the manuscript and offer advice, thereafter it is your responsibility to revise the manuscript and to decide when to submit the thesis.
Guidelines for Supervisors of Research Students

1. These Guidelines provide the broad framework of acceptable practice within which there are bound to be variations and diversity appropriate to different disciplines. Individual faculty documents may contain more detailed guidance but must be consistent with these Guidelines approved by Senate.

2. It is the responsibility of each head of school or nominee (usually the school director of postgraduate studies/ tutor) in consultation with the proposed supervisor to decide whether to recommend the admission of an applicant to undertake postgraduate research in his or her school. In reaching this decision the head of school or nominee should consider:
   (a) whether the candidate is appropriately qualified for the proposed subject of study and whether adequate academic references have been received;
   (b) whether the appropriate resources (e.g. library, computing, laboratory facilities, technical assistance) will be available;
   (c) whether, on the information available, the subject of study is suitable for the degree for which the candidate is to be registered;
   (d) whether it can reasonably be expected that the subject of study will be completed within the timescale prescribed;
   (e) whether proper supervision can be provided and maintained throughout the research period;
   (f) whether an appropriate programme of training and guidance in research methods can be offered to the candidate.

3. At the commencement of the proposed research programme the supervisor must have a detailed discussion with the student. The students need to have received, understood, and accepted the expectations of the research programme. Following this discussion a formal Learning Agreement should be signed by the student and by the supervisors. This Learning Agreement will be copied, one copy of which should be retained in the student’s Research Training Portfolio (RTP) and one copy should be sent to the Graduate School. The details of this discussion should be recorded by the supervisor and a copy given to the student. It should normally cover:
   (a) the scope of the proposed programme of work and an initial definition of the subject of study with particular emphasis on:
      (i) the importance of completing the programme in the time available;
      (ii) the standard of work expected (students should be referred to successful theses in the Library as a guide as to what is expected of them);
   this should form the basis of the project proposal which will need to be approved before the student’s Candidature is confirmed
   (b) the overall timetable for the planning and completion of the programme of work including any programme of training and guidance in research methods, any period of preliminary reading, and the writing of the thesis. This should be recorded in the student’s Personal Development Plan (PDP) within the Research Training Portfolio (RTP);
   (c) guidance about the use of literature, other sources of information, including other members of staff, and about attendance at appropriate courses and meetings of learned societies. In particular, the student’s attention should be drawn to the statement in paragraph 12 of the Guidelines for Research Students concerning standards of academic conduct. Appropriate guidance should be given to enable the student to avoid any possible concern about plagiarism or the fabrication of research results;
   (d) good practice in relation to the storage and retention of research data;
   (e) constraints, other than time, which may affect the programme of work, such as costs and the need to design and build equipment;
   (f) a programme of regular meetings between the supervisor and the student to monitor progress on the research and if appropriate to review the details of the overall timetable for the programme of work;
   (g) the submission of written work and/or the presentation of seminar papers while the research is in progress and the possibility of presenting work at learned societies and/or submitting it for publication directly.

4. The supervisor should maintain regular contact with the student and should give advice on the planning of work and on other matters, including the use of suitable techniques. He/she should request written work as appropriate and make constructive comments on it. If the student is following a research programme which will take more than one year to complete (e.g. full-time PhD, any part-time research degree), the supervisor shall during the first year of study require the student to produce at least one substantial piece of work (eg literature review, experimental write-up), in order to help assess his/her ability to proceed successfully through the subsequent years of the student research programme. The student may be required to make a presentation of this work to other staff and/or students.

5. A record of the student’s progress should be kept in the Research Training Portfolio (RTP) and approximately once a month formal meetings with the student should be held to review progress. In addition there should normally be three meetings during the year with the full supervisory team. The details of the meeting must be recorded in the RTP.

6. Students who are pursing a course of study without a previously approved project are required to submit a project proposal for approval by a school panel. Progress on the programme will be dependent upon acceptance of the project proposal by the dean of postgraduate studies.

7. Students registered for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy will normally be admitted conditionally. Conditional approval will be subject to the candidate being admitted initially as a candidate-elect. Doctoral candidature status will be confirmed provided satisfactory progress is made (see University Regulations) and the relevant progress panel so recommend, and that decision is confirmed by the dean of postgraduate studies.

8. Each year the supervisor must submit an annual report on the progress of the student’s programme of work to the school progress panel. This report should take into account the review procedures detailed in paragraphs 4 to 5 above.

9. Each year the student shall also submit an annual report on his/her progress and evidence of achievement as specified by the school or Graduate School to a school progress panel.

10. The Report Forms will be forwarded to a school panel which will consider the evidence and determine whether progress indicates that the research project will meet the standards for the award. The Progress Panel will make a report to the dean of postgraduate studies via the Graduate School, and further progress on the programme of study is subject to approval by the Dean. In addition to detailed feedback that the Progress Panel may wish to provide the supervisory team and the student, the Progress Panel will make one of the following recommendations to the Graduate School:
   1. That the candidate’s performance is satisfactory and that the candidature to study for the Doctor of Philosophy is confirmed;
   2. That notwithstanding some concerns which the

candidate and supervisory team should note, the candidate’s overall performance is satisfactory and that the candidate should continue or upgrade to study for the Doctor of Philosophy:

3. That the candidate’s performance is unsatisfactory and that a further assessment should be held within two months to determine whether progress on the programme will be recommended;

4. That the candidate’s performance is unsatisfactory and that a submission for a Master of Philosophy examination is recommended instead of a submission for a Doctor of Philosophy examination;

5. That the candidate’s performance is unsatisfactory and that no submission for a Master of Philosophy or Doctor of Philosophy examination is recommended, and that the student’s candidacy be terminated;

11. If at any stage throughout the period of study the supervisor feels that the progress of the student is unsatisfactory or that the standard of work generally is below that expected, he/she should inform the student by letter as well as orally of this opinion and the student shall be given the opportunity of an interview with the supervisory team. Following this notice and any interview, the supervisory team may decide to monitor progress and/or attendance; additionally or alternatively, the supervisory team may require the submission of written work in addition to that already prescribed by their project proposal and plan. If the student’s progress has not improved within such a period as shall be specified in the written notice, the supervisory team shall notify the dean and submit a report concerning the candidate’s progress for review by the appointed Progress Panel. The Progress Panel will make a report to the dean of postgraduate studies via the Graduate School.

12. Where it becomes impossible for a school to continue to provide direct supervision – for example because of the departure of the only member of staff able to supervise a particular topic – the head of school or director of postgraduate studies/tutor should consider alternative arrangements in good time and inform the relevant graduate school office so that formal approval may be sought from the appropriate Postgraduate Sub-Dean and/or faculty committee.

13. The supervisor should advise on the manuscript of the thesis in general and on content, presentation and organization. He/she should not act as a proof reader and should make this clear to the student. He/she should read all of the first draft and thereafter continue to offer advice. It must be made clear to the student that it is his/her responsibility to revise the thesis manuscript and to decide when it is ready for submission.

NOTE ON HEALTH AND SAFETY
Supervisors are responsible for ensuring that students under their supervision follow the agreed University and, where appropriate, School, safety policy and procedures. Full details of the University’s safety policy are contained in a booklet on Health and Safety available in all schools.

Guidelines on Good Practice for Research Students

Introduction
While the knowledge and skills that you gained as an undergraduate and/or in studying for a taught Master’s degree have given you a background in your subject and perhaps some experience of and insight into the process of research, they may not necessarily have equipped you to successfully study for a research degree. As Salmon (1992: 51) has put it: ‘Unlike a certificate, a diploma, a Bachelor’s or a [taught] Master’s degree, a [research degree] does not merely entail the consideration of already existing work within a pre-arranged structure but demands the creation of a personal project. To undertake [a research degree] is therefore to define oneself as having a contribution to make to the understanding of the area concerned.’

In seeking to make that contribution, you will have the advice, encouragement and support of your supervisor(s), of academic colleagues in the field, and of your fellow postgraduates, but ultimately the responsibility is yours. You may have to create the project; you will certainly have to undertake the research; you have to write it up as a dissertation or thesis; you have to complete on time and submit; possibly in the case of a Master’s degree and certainly in the case of a Doctorate, you will have to defend your work in an oral examination; and if you do all of these things to the satisfaction of your examiners, you will be awarded the degree.

The purpose of these Guidelines is to assist you to reflect on good practice in studying for a research degree. The Guidelines are not intended to be prescriptive or exhaustive, just to indicate what has been identified in the literature and elsewhere as good practice. But a number of the matters covered do relate to the University’s requirements of its research students, which are formally set out in its Guidelines for Research Students, and it is essential that students read the latter as well.

The Guidelines attempt to set out good practice in:

1. establishing and maintaining a good relationship with your supervisor(s)
2. approaching a research degree
3. preparing for research
4. where appropriate, choosing a topic
5. producing an initial research proposal and plan
6. writing regularly
7. dealing with academic problems
8. dealing with non-academic problems
9. reviewing the progress of the research
10. framing your thesis
11. writing your thesis
12. preparing for examination
13. publishing, networking, and developing your career

1. Establishing and Maintaining a Good Relationship with Your Supervisor(s)
Your relationship with your supervisor(s) is crucial to the success of the research project, and you need to start it off well and maintain it over time. As Cryer (2001 p58) has put it:

‘The relationship between a research student and a supervisor can be a precious thing. Supervisors and
Starting off well involves, firstly, making an early appointment to see your supervisor(s) in the first few days after your arrival; secondly, being clear about your respective roles and responsibilities; and thirdly establishing ground rules to govern your future relationship.

Until you have met with your supervisor(s), it is not possible to even begin the preliminary work on the project. While it can sometimes seem that, with one, two, or three years stretching ahead, the matter is not urgent, in reality the time soon passes and it is vital to meet with your supervisor(s) as soon as possible.

At the meeting, your supervisor(s) will welcome you and, in many cases, devote at least some time to discussing your respective roles in the relationship so that you both know what to expect of each other. This is vital because, as Delamont et al. (1997, p 14) have put it: ‘Relationships [between supervisors and students] have to be worked at and discussed, because most of the later problems stem from a failure to set out the expectations that both parties have for the relationship.’

So what your supervisor(s) might do is to say that he or she or they will:

- where appropriate, help with the choice of a topic
- advise on sources for the literature search
- advise on methodology and/or methods
- facilitate data collection in terms of access or equipment
- discuss results
- read drafts on grounds of substance
- advise on progression and submission
- assist you to develop your career

But they will expect you to:

- undertake the actual research
- write or re-draft chapters
- proofread the thesis

In pointing out that it is up to you to do these things, supervisors are not being difficult, but realistic; a research degree is an award for successfully completing a personal research project, and for that to be the case, you have to do the research, write it up, and make sure that the spelling, grammar, and punctuation are correct.

Particularly where research projects are multi-disciplinary and/or involve extended study outside the University, e.g. in industry, there may be two supervisors, one who is a member of the academic staff of the University, the other from the ‘outside’ institution in which the student will be studying. In such cases, the University requires that one supervisor should be the ‘primary’ supervisor, with overall responsibility for supervision, while the other is the ‘secondary’ supervisor. Normally in such cases there is a division of labour between the two supervisors, and it is important for the student to be aware of who will ‘lead’ on which aspects of the research project.

As well as having clear expectations about your respective roles, it is also important that you and your supervisor(s) discuss ground rules for working together. These might be as below:

You agree to:
- turn up on time for supervisions and give as much notice as possible of cancellations
- be properly prepared for your supervisions
- write regularly and share the draft materials
- maintain the highest standards of academic conduct, as set out in paragraph 10 of the University’s Guidelines for Research Students
- maintain contact with your supervisor(s), particularly when studying outside the University
- undertake the tasks agreed to the best of your ability within the allotted time

Your research supervisor(s) agree to:
- hold regular supervisions and give as much notice as possible of cancellations
- read work submitted promptly
- give written feedback.

All of you agree to:
- treat supervision in a business-like way with an agenda
- keep records of supervisions detailing what was discussed, what targets were agreed, and when they were to be achieved by.

This should help to put your relationship on a firm professional footing, and create a basis upon which you can continue to relate over time.

Of course, as with any relationship, that with your supervisor has to be worked at and maintained over time. In the early days you are likely to be heavily dependent upon your supervisor as you begin to find your feet in research. Once you have found your feet, your supervisor will expect you to become more independent, and your relationship should develop into a dialogue in which you engage in academic debate on a basis of increasing equality. By the time you are nearing completion, you will come to know more about the work than your supervisor, but will still be dependent upon his or her expertise to advise whether the research project has reached the stage at which it should be submitted for the degree or whether further research and/or re-writing is required.

It happens that, occasionally, what should be the natural transition from dependence to relative independence doesn’t transpire, either because the student remains over-dependent upon the supervisor or the latter is unwilling to ‘let go’. Because of these possibilities, it is useful, over the course of a research degree, for you and your supervisor to discuss your evolving relationship at regular intervals. This gives the supervisor a chance to flag to you that they think that you are more than ready to spread your wings and fly alone, or you the chance to ask for more space to take the research in your preferred direction.

Very rarely, research students find that they are unable to work effectively with their supervisors, and the relationship is in danger of breaking down. Procedures for dealing with this eventuality are set out in Paragraph 9 of the University’s Guidelines for Research Students.
2. Approaching a Research Degree

In order to be awarded a research degree, you have to satisfy the examiners that you have fulfilled the requirements for that degree as laid down in the University’s regulations and as applied in your own subject. It is vital that, at the very start of your studentship, you are aware of what those requirements are to avoid later errors. As one of the research students interviewed by Delamont et al. (1997 p 16) in their study of PhD students put the matter:

‘A lot of mistakes I’ve made are the result of not asking questions and people not putting me right. They presume I must know… I didn’t know the PhD was meant to be an argument…[that] it’s meant to say something. I thought it was one of those old-fashioned monographs, a collection of information. When I was an undergraduate I used to think a PhD was one of those articles you read in the journals, a 10,000 word article, I used to think they were PhDs.’

Clearly, if the student had clearly understood from the start what a PhD was, then these mistakes could have been avoided.

It is therefore worth spending some time looking at what will be the end product of your studies. Your starting point should be to unpack the University’s and, where appropriate, the faculty’s formal requirements for whatever research degree you are registered, and which are to be found in the Faculty Section of this Handbook. You should read these carefully and, preferably, discuss them with your supervisor so that you have a clear idea of what they mean.

While all research degrees have to meet the University and, where appropriate, the faculty’s requirements, they do this in very different ways, depending upon the discipline in which they are undertaken. It is therefore vital that you also have a clear understanding of what the relevant research dissertation or thesis in your discipline is like at the start of your studies. Your supervisor should recommend you to go and look at a couple of theses in the same or in cognate areas to your own, and you would be well-advised to do this and discuss key issues – for example in the case of PhD theses what made them original or how much of the thesis was publishable – in a supervision.

Reviewing Practice

Are you clear about what you can expect of your supervisor(s) and what he or she or they can expect from you? Have you established ground rules for your future professional relationship? Do you have arrangements for regularly reviewing your relationship with your supervisor?

3. Preparing for Research

Most new research students naturally perceive research to be as it is written up in articles and books, which portray it as a seamless unrolling of (for example), theory, hypothesis, method, data collection, data analysis, results, and conclusions. But the published account is only the visible part of the iceberg; beneath it lies the nine-tenths of blood, sweat, toil, and tears, including the ideas that were discarded, the investigations that ended up in blind alleys, the correlations that were in the wrong direction, the experiments that gave negative results, and sometimes the sheer fluke that led to the substantive advance. Research can, for much of the time, be a messy, difficult, and frustrating process as any researcher, including your supervisor, will tell you.

But you can minimize, if not eliminate, the frustrations of research by thorough preparation at the start of your studentship. In particular, you can ensure that you are familiar with the resources available to support your project, that you are familiar with the processes of research in your discipline, and that you are personally organized to undertake the project.

You need to be familiar with the resources available to support your research, both material and human. The former includes the library, centrally and locally-provided computing facilities, and any specialized equipment needed for your project; the latter includes academic and fellow researchers and research students in your school. You will be provided with opportunities to attend induction sessions relating to all of these resources, and it is vital that you take advantage and make sure that you know what is available, how to access them, and how to use them in ways that are conducive to the health, safety, and welfare both of yourself and others. In the latter context, you should about read the University’s Health and Safety Policy in Part Two of this Handbook and the relevant school health and safety policy and, if appropriate discuss this with your supervisor.

You also need to be familiar with what is involved in the research process and with good practice in doing research in your field. In the graduate schools, this is laid on for you through a programme of research training. In some cases, for example ESRC awards, the successful completion of such a training is a condition of support, whereas in others it may be a graduate school requirement. You must find out about the research training programme and attend; this is your opportunity to be informed about what is involved in research in your discipline by academic staff who are not only knowledgeable about the processes of research but also about the practice. As well as attending graduate school and, where appropriate, school training programmes, you will also find it helpful to read through one or more of the general texts about research (see for example Cryer 2000; Leonard 2001; Phillips and Pugh 2000; Wisker 2001) or ones relating to specific disciplines where your supervisor may be able to help with references.

As well as being familiar with the resources and the research process, you also need to be well-organized personally in terms of time, working conditions, and research materials.

With regard to time, as a full-time postgraduate research student you probably have more control over how you spend your time than at any other period in your working life. While this can be exhilarating, it can also, as Welsh (1979 p 33) has put it, ‘be all too easy for the postgraduate to spend his [her] time pottering in out and far behind getting what are tight deadlines to complete the project. If, for this reason, time management is vital to full-time students, this is even more the case with part-time ones who may well be combining a job and/or a family with their research. For this reason it is well-worth adopting explicit time management techniques (see for example Cryer 2000 pp 91-106; Graham and Grant 1997 pp 42-45).

With regard to working conditions, the demands of research are, or can be, very intense, and you need an appropriate working environment in which you can read, reflect, think, evaluate, and write. You need to establish what facilities are available in your school or, if you undertake work at home, create a suitable space.

With regard to research materials, this covers both data and results generated in the course of the research and sources such as books, articles, papers, and other theses. In terms of data and results, particularly in experimental research, it is of the utmost importance that these are recorded and maintained in such a way that they can vouch for the accuracy and authenticity of your research. You must read, and follow to the letter, the University’s requirements for the retention and storage of data as set out in Section 11 of its Guidelines for Research Students.

In terms of other sources, it is important that you index and store them so that they are immediately accessible when
needed — there is nothing more frustrating than being in full flow writing up a piece of work and then being unable to find the source for that seminal point which, you have just realized, will tie the chapter together. You should assume that anything that you read may well find its way into the dissertation or thesis, take full details of the reference (preferably in a database organized in terms of whichever referencing system you will use for the final work), and put any materials into a filing system with an index which makes it easy to retrieve.

Last, but not least, there is the obvious point that, where data and/or sources are stored electronically, they must be backed up with a second copy kept in another place. Research can be frustrating enough without losing weeks or sometimes months of work through failure to back up a file.

Reflecting on Practice
Are you fully aware of the range of resources available to support your research project? Have you developed the skills to use them effectively? Are you aware of health, safety and welfare policies? Do you understand from your faculty and or school training programme what is entailed in the research process in your subject? Are you managing your time effectively? Do you have adequate facilities for your research? Do your arrangements for retaining and storing data meet the University’s requirements? Have you organized your references and sources so that you can access them quickly? Do you regularly back up your work? Do you keep the copies in another place?

4. Choosing a Topic
In many cases, and particularly in engineering and the sciences, students are often recruited to research a particular topic which has been pre-defined by the supervisor. But, occasionally in these fields and frequently in others, students are recruited on the basis of their interest in working in a broadly defined area of the subject, which has to be narrowed down sooner or later to a specific topic.

This can be a very difficult time for research students; as one of the research students interviewed by Delamont et al. (1997 p 27) said about their search for a topic: ‘...the whole thing seemed very daunting, you don’t know where your niche is, or even if there is one for you.’

So, you can spend valuable time searching for a niche and then, when you think that you have found one, the topic turns out to be far too ambitious. So you find yourself thrashing around in a seeming intellectual vacuum again, and so it goes on.

It is important to remember that this is by no means abnormal and that you should receive strong support at this stage from your supervisor(s). What he or she or they might do (or what you can do yourself) is to take an apparently promising project and subject it to the six key tests; (i) is it worth doing?; (ii) in principle, could it be done?; (iii) could it be done within the time available?; (iv) do you have, or could you acquire, the knowledge and skills to do it within that time?; (v) would it sustain your interest?; and (vi), if you did complete it successfully, would it meet the requirements for the research degree?

It may take several iterations before both you and your supervisor are confident that you have a topic which will meet these key tests, and which will give you a starting point for your research. It should, however, be noted that it is only a starting point, as the research develops it may change, and the final topic may be different from that with which you started out. This is by no means abnormal, but it is important, in consultation with your supervisor(s), to keep track of the evolution of the topic and ensure that the result will still pass the six tests.

5. Producing an Initial Research Proposal and Plan
It is a requirement of the University (Guidelines for Research Students, Section 2) that research students should, in conjunction with their supervisors, produce and agree an initial research proposal and plan. In science and engineering subjects, this has usually been done previously as part of the bid for research funding, but this may not be the case in others. At their simplest, research proposals and plans set out what research students are proposing to do in their research projects, and when they are proposing to do it by.

With regard to an initial research proposal, a simple guide to drafting one might be to try and address the eight key questions of:

- What is the topic of my research?
- What have others written on this topic?
- Where appropriate, what conceptual/theoretical frameworks might be useful in approaching my research?
- What method or methods might be useful in undertaking that research?
- How could I go about designing the research?
- How could I collect my data?
- How could I analyse my data?
- How might my findings contribute to knowledge in this field?

In addition, there may be specific guidelines from your school and/or your supervisor(s) which should be followed in writing a research proposal. The draft proposal should then be shown to, and discussed with, your supervisor and amended in accordance with his or her comments.

With regard to an initial research plan, this involves unpacking what the tasks will be and assigning target time values to them which will enable you to complete on time. So, for example, for a three-year PhD in the social sciences, the initial research plan could be as below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Month</th>
<th>Research tasks</th>
<th>Writing tasks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Reading around suitable topics</td>
<td>Mini-reports on identified topics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Narrowing down topics</td>
<td>Short-list of topics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Selecting a starting topic</td>
<td>Justification of topic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Reviewing literature</td>
<td>Outline research proposal and plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Reviewing literature</td>
<td>Literature evaluation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Reading on concepts and methods</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Once you have an initial research plan, then it is important to discuss it with your supervisor, check that it is realistic in terms of the allocation of time to task, and if necessary, amend it.

It should be stressed that, as with the topic, both the initial research proposal and the plan may well be subject to change over the course of the research as the focus perhaps changes as do activities and in consequence the timings. This is normal and not, in itself, a cause for concern – the proposal and the plan are intended as a flexible framework and not as a cage. But it is important that, at regular intervals during the research project, you and your supervisor review the proposal and the plan and update them to reflect the evolution of the research project. This should help you to keep track of where the project has been and where it is going and, most crucially, whether you may need to step up a gear to keep the project to time.

### Reflecting on Practice

Have you, in conjunction with your supervisor, agreed an initial research proposal and a research plan? Do you review them regularly with a view to updating them and keeping the research project on track?

### 6. Writing Regularly

As you begin to make progress with your research, you should put pen to paper as soon as possible, for four reasons. Firstly, it enables you to keep a record of what you have done from the start to serve as a basis for later work. Secondly, it encourages you to reflect on what you have done so far and think about where you will go from here. Thirdly, it gives your confidence. Whereas, as undergraduates or postgraduates, students outlined and discussed the work of other people, as research students their writing becomes, or should become, a presentation of their own views, ideas, thoughts, etc. This can leave students feeling very exposed and, particularly if their standard is published work, very dissatisfied with what they have achieved. For these reasons, they may be psychologically reluctant to write.

One way of ensuring that you write regularly is, as Blaxter et al. (1996* pp 5-59) have suggested, to keep a research diary on a daily basis recording what you have done, time spent on it, analysis, and speculation. This gets you into the habit of writing regularly, recording, and reflecting, and can provide a useful basis upon which to construct longer pieces of work.

In constructing longer pieces, you can make what may seem a Herculean task more manageable by breaking it up into smaller ones. So, initially, you might write a one-page abstract of the chapter setting out its aim (purpose), content (what it would cover), and possible conclusions (what it would add). With that thought through and discussed, the next stage would be to write a synopsis fleshing out the abstract and setting out headings and sub-headings to be used. Then, with a framework established, you can to fill it in piece by piece until you have a draft chapter.

In order to improve your academic writing, you can read books on the subject (for example: Dunleavy 2003; Murray 2002), ask your supervisor for examples of such writing from the literature in the field, or even pair up with another research student who will undertake to read drafts and suggest improvements in return for similar support from you for their efforts.

In terms of overcoming psychological reluctance to write, you can, as Murray (2002) has suggested, ‘free-write’, i.e. write it down as it comes without any attempt to structure or present it for an academic audience. This takes the pressure off you and although, at the time, you may feel that it is worthless, you can be surprised to return to it later and find that it does take you forward.

Additionally, and provided that you warn him or her beforehand that it is a free-written draft, it can be useful to show it to your supervisor and gain some feedback. Supervisors are aware from their own experiences that virtually all research starts-off very rough-hewn and will allow for this, and of course most would prefer a ‘messy’ draft of a chapter from one of their research students rather than nothing at all.

It may be noted that, while writing is a necessary task for all research students, it is inherently a more difficult one for students whose first language is not English and who have perhaps been educated within different styles of academic discourse. Your supervisor may be able to assist by discussing example of writing with you, your faculty may offer a programme and, of course the University Language Centre runs regular courses on academic writing in English and offers a range of other forms of support.

### Reviewing Practice

Have you started writing as early as possible in the research project? Are you writing regularly? Are you showing your written work to your supervisor? Would you find it useful to have some assistance with academic writing in English?

### 7. Dealing with Academic Problems

While you can be well prepared for research, it is frequently the case that, at some point during the project, you experience academic problems of one kind or another. Common ones include:

- Drifting from the topic

As the research progresses, highways and byways of new exploration open up which just have to be investigated because they could be vital. So you become lost in the maze of possibilities and unable to establish where you should be at...
that stage of the project.

♦ Difficulties with the methodology/methods

Particularly in the arts and humanities and social science, the section of your thesis on methodology/methods can require you to grapple with a whole range of unfamiliar philosophical, theoretical, empirical and experimental problems, and it can be frustrating to try and identify, tackle, and resolve these, particularly when you are really itching to undertake the substantive research.

♦ Problems with the substantive research

You can expect a range of problems to occur as you undertake the substantive research – evidence that you can't obtain as easily as you hoped, experiments that don't work, apparently promising lines of enquiry which turn out to be dead ends, simulations which don't run properly – the list is endless.

♦ Drowning in data

You collect masses and masses of data, start playing around with them, and find all sorts of interesting things that can be investigated in and around the topic and then even outside it. As a result, you are unable to discriminate between what to concentrate upon in your research project and what to leave out.

♦ Unexpected results

With the substantive research accomplished, you find results which you did not expect – the evidence which is contradictory, the experiments which yield negative results, the cast-iron assumptions which are apparently falsified, the simulation results which defy predictions, variables which behave badly etc. etc.

If you hit problems of these kinds or others, it is important that you acknowledge them secure in the knowledge that you can't obtain as easily as you hoped, experiments that don't work, apparently promising lines of enquiry which turn out to be dead ends, simulations which don't run properly – the list is endless.

You may, particularly in the early stages of a research degree, experience bouts of self-doubt. These can arise from the situation of a research student; as one of the respondents to Delamont et al's (1997: p 27) survey put the matter: ‘...you are suspended between a student who just absorbs things and an academic who produces [them], and that [leads to] all kinds of paranoias or neuroses.’

Self-doubt often takes the form of anxiety about whether you will be able to successfully make the transition from being primarily an absorber of to contributor to knowledge, and it can be associated with a reluctance to write or at least to submit written work to your supervisor(s) in case it is ‘not good enough’.

It is worth noting that such self-doubt is not uncommon, and that dealing with it is part and parcel of the experience of being a research student. In terms of how to deal with it, the key thing is to write – no matter how mundane you think that the piece or chapter is – and show the work to your supervisor(s).

While you are, of course, bound up in the research, and are often unable to judge the contribution that you are making – in time even the most original insights come to seem commonplace to their creators – your supervisor has a greater degree of objectivity. He or she is far better placed to ascertain how you are progressing, and to offer guidance and support for your work.

As well as self-doubt, one of the most consistent findings of the literature on research students over the past three decades (see for example: Becher 1994 143; Cryer 2000; Delamont et al. 1997; Leonard 2001; Phillips and Pugh 2000; Rudd 1975, Rudd 1985) is that research students can feel isolated. As well as experiencing academic problems of one kind or another, research students may also experience a range of non-academic problems arising from their situation. Three common ones are self-doubt, isolation, and boredom.

You may find such people in your family, your social group, or in your department... However, if you have to go outside into a national or an international arena, so be it. Overcoming isolation or potential isolation must be a major objective for all research students.'

A third common feature of the life of the postgraduate student which has been identified in the literature (see Phillips and Pugh, 2000, pp 77-78) is the tendency towards boredom. This could be associated with a reluctance to write or at least to submit written work to your supervisor(s) in case it is ‘not good enough’.

It is worth noting that such self-doubt is not uncommon, and that dealing with it is part and parcel of the experience of being a research student. In terms of how to deal with it, the key thing is to write – no matter how mundane you think that the piece or chapter is – and show the work to your supervisor(s).

While you are, of course, bound up in the research, and are often unable to judge the contribution that you are making – in time even the most original insights come to seem commonplace to their creators – your supervisor has a greater degree of objectivity. He or she is far better placed to ascertain how you are progressing, and to offer guidance and support for your work.

As well as self-doubt, one of the most consistent findings of the literature on research students over the past three decades (see for example: Becher 1994 143; Cryer 2000; Delamont et al. 1997; Leonard 2001; Phillips and Pugh 2000; Rudd 1975, Rudd 1985) is that research students can feel isolated. As well as experiencing academic problems of one kind or another, research students may also experience a range of non-academic problems arising from their situation. Three common ones are self-doubt, isolation, and boredom.

You may find such people in your family, your social group, or in your department... However, if you have to go outside into a national or an international arena, so be it. Overcoming isolation or potential isolation must be a major objective for all research students.'

A third common feature of the life of the postgraduate student which has been identified in the literature (see Phillips and Pugh, 2000, pp 77-78) is the tendency towards boredom. This could be associated with a reluctance to write or at least to submit written work to your supervisor(s) in case it is ‘not good enough’.
tends to happen when you are well into your research, and have reached a stage where, as Cryer (2000 p171) puts it, 'your work genuinely is excessively routine and monotonous'. So, you're churning it out day after day, and you become bored with the whole thing and ripe for distractions which will take your mind.

There is no simple neat solution to this problem – if you want to complete you have to continue the research – but it can be beneficial to either do something else (write or re-write an earlier chapter) or even take a short break and then come back to it with a fresher mind. But, if you contemplate a break, do ask your supervisor and agree with him or her to stick to a defined time – there are many ex-research students who took a breather from their studies and then procrastinated about returning until it was far too late.

While these, of course, are non-academic problems arising out of being a research student, you may encounter other difficulties of a personal, social, and financial character that have a bearing upon your research. You should certainly alert your supervisor, who is your personal tutor, to any such difficulties that you may be experiencing, or if you feel this is inappropriate, then you also have access to the full range of graduate school and University support services outlined in Part Two of this Handbook.

9. Reviewing the Progress of the Research

One of the key tasks of research students is to review the progress of their research. This involves variously self-review, formal reviews with supervisors, and participating in school, graduate school and University review procedures.

Research students are under considerable pressure variously from sponsors, bank managers, the University, and schools to complete their degrees within the allotted time. Your chances of completing on time or as near as possible will be significantly enhanced if you treat the research as a project and actively manage it to meet the deadline. The skills that you need to do this may well be imparted in your research training programme or, if not, you can consult one of the texts, e.g. (Cryer 2000; Graham and Grant 1997; Phillips and Pugh 2000).

Either way, you should find that one of the critical recommendations is that you should treat your research plan not as an exercise to be completed at the start of the studentship and then filed away, but as a ‘live’ document to be reviewed and updated frequently and regularly over the duration of the project. You should, then, consult it regularly; update it in the light of your progress to date; consider the implications for the completion of the research; and, as far as possible, act to keep the project on track. It may be noted that such self-apprenticeship will not only help you to finish your research degree as soon as possible, but also enhance your project management skills and your attractiveness to employers (see Part Two).

As well as self-reviewing, the University requires (Guidelines for Research Students, Para 5) that you also formally review your progress with your supervisor(s) at least once per term, i.e. three times per year. It is important that you treat these supervisions in a businesslike way as an opportunity to discuss the progress of your research with your supervisor(s) and that you keep a record of what was discussed and what action points were identified.

One way of doing this is to use the pro-forma such as Appendix C in the Research Training Portfolio, which will provide a record of the supervision.

As well as student and supervisor review, School Progress Panels will also have formal procedures, usually involving the submission and/or presentation of pieces of work at specified intervals. It is worth noting that, while these review procedures are intended to assure the graduate school that your progress is satisfactory, they are also intended to be helpful to you. They give you the opportunity to gain feedback on your work from senior researchers in your school.

Reflecting on Practice

Do you have feelings of self-doubt about your capacity to undertake research? How can you overcome them?

Where appropriate, do you have academic and social networks in place to counter isolation? What strategies do you have to deal with potential boredom? Are you aware of the range of support services offered to research students?

10. Framing Your Thesis

After spending the best part of one, two or three years of your life training to do research and then undertaking the actual research for your project, you are then faced with what is the last major task of producing your thesis. This task is absolutely crucial because, as Cryer (2000 p177) has put it:

'The thesis is the culmination of [the] research student’s entire research programme, and it is on the thesis that he or she will be examined and judged.'

This, of course, raises the question of 'what is a thesis?' While there is no objective definition of a thesis and there are variations between what is expected in different disciplines, one common factor is, as Barnes cited Blaxter et al. (1996 p 27) has put it, that:

'A [thesis] is far more than a passive record of your research and generally involves presenting an argument or point of view. In other words, it must say something and be substantiated with reasoned argument and evidence.'

So, producing your thesis involves more than throwing everything you have done into the pot and hoping for the best; it has to involve a case or point of view and be substantiated with reasoned argument and evidence.

This can be difficult to do because, to put it at its simplest, often we cannot see the wood (the thesis) for the trees (the mass of writings and materials we have accumulated over the course of the research). So, in order to produce a thesis, we need to know the shape of the wood, i.e. a framework for our thesis.

There are many ways of developing a framework for your thesis, and it is worth consulting your supervisor about suitable approaches. One possibility suggested in the literature (see for example Cryer 2000; Taylor 2002) is for you to think of yourself as an explorer who has undertaken a journey and who is writing a guidebook. As the author of the guidebook, you need to explain:

- where you started from
- what other guidebooks you read
- why you decided to undertake the journey
- how you decided to approach the journey
- the route you decided to follow
- for the PhD/MD, the original discoveries you made on the way
- where you arrived at the end of the journey
- how it differed from the starting point
- where you would go from here in future.

You can literally map this on a couple of sides of paper, and then re-trace the journey. At each stage you need to ask the questions: What is it vital to say to the reader on to the next stage? What is it important but not vital? What is neither important nor vital? By this process, if necessary repeated
several times, you should be able to distil the essence of the thesis (the vital) and separate it from the important and the relatively unimportant.

With, hopefully, a stripped-down and clear route, you can then begin to fill in each stage of the journey in terms of key topics which you have to address, which you use to flesh out your map. You can then apply the same tests as above - are they vital, important, or neither - and go through a similar iterative process. Then, within the topics, this can be repeated with sub-topics until, eventually, you have a complete map of the thesis.

Such an approach has a number of advantages. Firstly, it gives you an overall framework for your thesis; secondly, it divides the writing into manageable tasks; thirdly, and vitally, it can be discussed with your supervisor(s) before writing up; fourthly it highlights the key things you need to bring out in terms of discoveries (originality), added knowledge and understanding (the differences between the start and end point), and future research in the area (where we go from here); and finally may translate into the structure for a thesis. So, for example, in the case of many PhDs, the translation is:

### 'Journey' Thesis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Starting point</th>
<th>Literature review</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Guidebooks</td>
<td>Methodology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reasons</td>
<td>Research findings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approach</td>
<td>Discussion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Route and discoveries</td>
<td>Conclusions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrival</td>
<td>Bibliography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Differences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Reflecting on Practice

What are the requirements for a thesis in your discipline? How can you establish a framework to organize your research into a thesis?

### 11. Writing Your Thesis

Once you have established a basic framework, you still, of course, have to write the thesis. Here the three key issues to consider are: who am I writing for? (audience); how do I actually go about writing it? (drafting); how do I make sure that it reads well? (presentation).

A research thesis, like any other piece of writing, is a form of communication, and it is necessary to consider in advance the audience that you are addressing and how you might meet their needs. Here, Cryer (2000 p 178) has some good advice:

> 'The crucially important audience for theses are external examiners. Think of them as individuals who are exceptionally busy and grossly underpaid and who therefore have to read theses quickly. They will expect them to be well-structured and to be argued coherently to make the case for certain solutions to specific research problems. Irrelevancies will irritate, as will having to tease out meaning that research students should have extracted themselves. Think of them also as individuals who are very able and experienced in the general area, which means that the background material should be as concise as is consistent with showing that it is known.

> 'However, no external examiner can be an expert in your work. By the time you finalise your thesis, you and you alone are the world's expert. So the aspects that make your work significant and original and worthy of a PhD...need to be argued coherently; each step needs to be spelled out, the outcomes must be stated unambiguously, and all their implications identified and discussed in depth.'

So, for your examiners, the thesis needs to be (i) well-structured (ii) argued coherently (iii) relevant (iv) concise in the literature review (v) expansive and detailed on areas in which the thesis makes a significant and original contribution to knowledge. Clearly (i) to (iv) above apply to all research degrees, while (v) applies particularly to the PhD/MD.

(i) and (iii) above clearly have a bearing on what you write; (ii) has a bearing on what you include when you write, and (iv) and (v) have a bearing on the proportion of the thesis taken up by each heading. So, for example for PhD/MD, you should certainly not aim for half of your thesis to be taken up by the literature review, a further quarter by the methodology, and only a quarter for the original scholarship.

What it can be useful to do is to produce a rough distribution of how much should be devoted to what part of the thesis. Such a distribution, produced by the University of Warwick as a guideline for PhD students (cited Blaxter et al. 1996* p 217) are set out below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>% of thesis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Literature review</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methodology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Research findings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discussion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conclusions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bibliography</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

While the percentages may vary in different cases, it is crucial to plan them with the needs of the audience in mind.

With the needs of your audience in mind, it is then possible to proceed to drafting. One of the (few) common factors in the research degree experience is that it almost always takes far longer to write up the thesis than had been planned. The reason for this is that, when we finally write up, we have finished the substance of the project and now have, or should have, the benefit of hindsight, which leads us to change, amend, and modify the draft. While this is an entirely legitimate and valuable part of a research degree – it is in fact learning from what we have done – it can result in considerable delays in producing a first rough draft.

You should then review this yourself. Here it can be very useful to look at the *Handbook for the Examiners of Research Degrees* – the part of this Handbook which sets out the criteria which they will apply to your thesis. You should apply these then, if necessary, re-draft the thesis and ask your supervisor(s) for comments. Following that, you should re-draft in the light of their comments, review it again yourself, and so the cycle continues until a final draft emerges.

As well as meeting requirements for the substance of the research degree, it is also vital that the draft is well-presented, for two reasons. Firstly, while good presentation cannot rescue a poor thesis, it may help a marginal one, i.e. the examiners may be inclined to take a more charitable view if the thesis is easily readable and, as far as possible, error-free. Secondly, inadequacies in expression and errors in spelling and grammar are one of the most common reasons for the referral of theses, i.e. for these being accepted subject to minor corrections. It can be extremely galling to have to spend a month or two correcting elementary mistakes and errors, not just to you but to your supervisor who will be landed with the task of checking that your errors have been corrected before the degree can be awarded. So it is important that you get this right before you go further.

You should:

- ensure that you have expressed yourself as clearly and concisely as possible (reading out loud can often help to identify over-long sentences and unnecessary padding)
- check the grammar and the spelling (it is your

---

Assuming that you do decide to submit, before actually doing so, you would be well advised to consider this very carefully for fear of falling at the final fence.

Given that many of us can be blind to our own deficiencies and errors, it can be very helpful to ask a friend with some expertise in the area to comment on the comprehensibility of the draft and to also ask him or her to check it for errors.

With this done, it is back to your supervisor for a final re-read and, hopefully, the green light to go ahead and submit the thesis for examination. If your supervisor still has reservations, you can still submit – ultimately it is your decision – but you would be well advised to consider this very carefully for fear of failing at the final fence.

Assuming that you do decide to submit, before actually doing so you should check the University's regulations about submission. Usually, you are required to give notice of submission, and you may have to conform to a range of stylistic regulations, e.g. concerning page margins and layout, as well as paragraph, word, and meeting any other requirements, including a count of the number of words. Only when you are satisfied on this score can you print off copies to be bound and submitted to your examiners.

### Reviewing Practice

Are you clear about the audience for which you are writing? Have you decided upon an appropriate balance between the lengths of the various parts of the thesis? Have you reviewed your thesis using the Handbook for Examiners? Has your supervisor seen the draft? Have you taken their comments on board? Have you asked their advice about submission? Have you checked the University’s regulations about giving notice of submission? Have you checked the University’s requirements in terms of the submission of theses?

### 12. Preparing for Examination

Following submission of the final title of the thesis, examiners are appointed, normally one internal and one external examiner. In the case of Master's research degrees, the process of examination normally involves the assessment of the dissertation or thesis by the examiners but, in the case of the MPhil may involve an oral examination. In the case of the PhD/MD, University regulations require an oral examination, i.e. a viva.

Vivas are comparatively rare in undergraduate and taught postgraduate programmes; in most Universities they are only held if there is some doubt about the class of degree to be awarded, although in some they are mandatory for the award of a First.

But, of course, vivas are compulsory for the award of the PhD/MD. The implication of this is, of course, that candidates starting PhDs/MDs often have little or no experience of oral examinations. While they gain some by defending their work at progress reviews, this is still a far cry from the full rigour of a formal oral examination.

This might be of little consequence if, as in many other European countries, the viva was a public affair and they could go along and experience what happened. However, the British viva rarely gives access to people other than the examiners. Again, this might not matter if there were published guidelines for the viva, but this is not always the case. So, as Burnham (1997 p 30) has put it ‘...what occurs in the lengthy "judgy huddle" from which postgraduates emerge either victorious or distraught is a mystery'.

In consequence, as Delamont et al. (1997 p 148) have written:

> The [PhD] student may well fear and dread the [viva]

**Even when the student is outstandingly competent, and however excellent the thesis may be, the process of examination is a stressful one...most [candidates] feel worried by the indefiniteness of the viva**.

However you can prepare for your viva in six main ways.

Firstly, it is important to understand what vivas are about, i.e. their purposes, procedures, and outcomes. These are explained in detail in the University’s Handbook for Examiners of Research Degrees which is set out in this part of this Handbook. You will find it helpful to discuss these with your supervisor.

Secondly, you need, of course, to be thoroughly familiar with your thesis. While this may seem strange since you wrote it, it is amazing how quickly you can forget what you have written, and you do need to re-read it. Often, you will find typos and other errors you have missed earlier – if so, list them and take them with you to the viva to show your examiners that you are aware of them.

Thirdly, you need to keep up to date with the literature in your area in the hiatus between submission and the viva. If a key paper comes out during that period, your examiners may ask you about it and about any implications for your work, and it obviously creates a good impression if you are aware of it.

Fourthly, as well as being prepared for questions concerning new literature, it can also be useful to anticipate the sorts of questions you might be asked and at least think about how you will answer them. There are some fairly obvious general ones (e.g. ‘Why did you do this topic?’ ‘Why did you study here?’ ‘What would have done differently if you were doing the research now?’ ‘What do you think the implications of your work are for the field?’) for which you can prepare.

Fifthly, you can ask your supervisor to arrange a mock viva in which colleagues who are experienced in examining question you on key parts of the thesis and afterwards give you feedback upon your performance. Such an opportunity, which as part of their progress monitoring procedures, is invaluable in enabling students to prepare themselves both intellectually and psychologically for what is to come.

Finally, on the day itself, you need to be prepared for the experience. You should go to the viva as well-rested and fed as possible, and appropriately attired – it is a formal occasion so you need to be well-dressed but as you will be sitting down for a couple of hours and possibly more you need to feel comfortable as well. You should take with you:

- a copy of your thesis (preferably loose-bound so you can find pages quickly)
- pen and paper if you need to jot questions down or possibly draw diagrams
- where appropriate, a list of corrections
- copies of any original results, print-outs, or raw data which may be helpful in substantiating key points made in the thesis

Following Cryer (2000 p 197), you should:

- be composed when you enter the room
- sit squarely on the chair, not on the edge
- ask for anything not to your liking in the room to be changed, e.g. your seat moved out of sunlight
- wait for questions to be asked of you by the examiners
- show that you are listening attentively
- ask for clarification if questions are unclear
- take whatever time you need to answer them
- defend your thesis without becoming wholly defensive, i.e. be prepared if necessary to concede points
- be scholarly in your approach, i.e. give answers weighing the pros and cons before reaching balanced conclusions

When the examiners have finished their questions, they may well ask if there is anything you wish to say; this is an opportunity for you to clarify or expand upon any answer which you felt did not do you justice, or raise any other matters concerning the examination.

At the end of the viva, the Chair should ask you to leave while the examiners deliberate, and afterwards you will normally be called back in to be informed of the examiners’ recommendation.

In many cases, the recommendation will be to award the degree subject to making minor corrections (usually spelling and grammar) to the satisfaction of your supervisor. In others, it will be awarded subject to making minor revisions within six months, and in a few making major ones within twelve months. While these recommendations may be disappointing, it is important to remember that the examiners’ expectation is still that you will eventually pass, and they are required to specify what you need to do to make the grade. Other outcomes, i.e. the award of a lower research degree or a fail, are mercifully rare. But, if this does happen and you have reason to believe that this relates to unfairness in the examination procedure, you have a right to appeal, and details of the University’s appeals procedure are set out in Part Six of this Handbook.

But, in the vast majority of cases, you should only need to do one thing after the viva — celebrate.

### Reviewing Practice

Have you found out about the process of examination from the Handbook for Examiners of Research Degrees? Have you prepared adequately in advance for your viva? Have you prepared for the day itself?

---

13. Publishing, Networking, and Developing Your Career

There are three other areas of good practice for research students, namely publishing, networking, and developing your career.

If at all possible, you should try and publish work during your studentship; this can help to mark out your academic territory, bring you into contact with others in the field, boost your self-esteem — it is a coup to be published when still a graduate student — and provide a better platform for employment, particularly in the research field inside or outside the universities. Your supervisor should be able to advise you about whether your work should be published and, if so, how to go about it.

Also, you should consciously network within the academic and/or professional community relating to your field. Academia is heavily dependent upon networking informally and formally, in the latter case through professional associations and conferences. You should try and establish your own informal networks, and participate in the professional ones, e.g. the postgraduate sections of professional associations. Such networking will bring you into contact with others in the same field, help to prevent isolation, offer you opportunities to attend conferences and give papers, and finally enable you to acquire skills which will stand you in good stead in your career, inside or outside academia (see for example Blaxter et al. 1998* pp 55-77). Again, your supervisor can help with contacts and advise on professional association memberships, etc.

Last, but by no means least, you should, from the beginning of your research studentship, be conscious of the need to develop skills and plan for your future career. Your primary objective as a research student is, of course, to gain a research degree, and this will be valuable in seeking employment. But, in today’s labour market, you also need to have the key — transferable — skills which are demanded by employers.

You can learn about the skills demanded by employers by, as early as possible in your studentship, attending training and development events organized by the University’s Careers Service. The latter has also produced a list of such skills (see www.careers.ncl.ac.uk/students/frames/employFrame.html) which can be used as a benchmark against which you can develop them over the course of your programme.

So, at the start of your programme, you should look at the list and see which skills you have acquired already and which you will need to acquire over the remainder of your studentship. You should then check out which of these skills you will acquire in the course of your research training programme — they should be listed in the programme handbook — and discuss with your supervisor the other skills that you will acquire by undertaking your research. You should then audit your skills and identity any gaps — a common one for research students particularly in the humanities and social sciences is team-working — and make plans to fill them.

Your supervisor will be of assistance in this regard, as will the postgraduate adviser in the Careers Service.

While all of the key skills are important, it is worth highlighting the acquisition of one in particular, namely effective oral presentation skills. Such skills are vital in the academic context (a number of graduate schools ask research students to make oral presentations as part of their procedures for progression and of course you need them to make presentations to seminars and conferences) and for employment in virtually any field. You should take every opportunity to develop these skills through your graduate school training programme, by reading the relevant literature (e.g. Cryer 2000) and by asking your supervisor or other colleagues to listen to a mini-presentation and give you feedback.

As well as actually acquiring skills for employment, you also need to be able to document their acquisition. In some graduate schools, this process has been formalised by the introduction of Personal Development Records whereby students are required to record the acquisition of skills and present the records as evidence of satisfactory progress. In others it is up to the student to keep a record, which can be done by creating a portfolio based upon how you meet the Careers Service list. Either way, if you can demonstrate to employers that you have acquired the appropriate skills, this will greatly enhance your chances of gaining the good job which you deserve for all of the work and effort you have put in over the course of your research degree.

### Reviewing Practice

Have you discussed possible opportunities for publications with your supervisor? Have you taken steps to establish informal networks in your subject community? Have you joined the relevant subject associations? Have you attended Careers Service events on career planning and development? Have you reviewed your skills against the University’s template? Have you made efforts to fill any gaps?

Have you documented the skills you can offer to prospective employers?

---

### Conclusions

Research degrees are unique in so far as, rather than working within a pre-established framework, you have to often create and always undertake and manage a project to its conclusion. This is not an easy task but, in so far as your research will advance and/or contribute to the sum of knowledge and understanding in your subject, a worthwhile one. Hopefully these Guidelines have helped to unpack what you need to do to successfully gain a research degree, given you indicators of good practice, and assisted you to reflect upon your effectiveness as a research student.

### References

Atkins, D. (1996*). A Student Perspective, Supervision of Research Students: Centre for Educational Development and Academic Methods, ANU.
Guidelines on Good Practice in Research Supervision

Introduction

Research supervision has been characterized by Brown and Atkins (1988, p 115) as

"...probably the most complex and subtle form of teaching in which we engage. It is not enough for us to be competent researchers ourselves – although this is vital. We need to be able to reflect upon research practices and analyse the knowledge techniques and methods which make them effective. But there is a step even beyond this. We have to be skilled in enabling our research students to acquire those techniques and methods themselves without stultifying or warping their own intellectual development. In short, to be an effective research supervisor, you need to be an effective researcher and an effective supervisor."

As a member of the academic staff at Newcastle, you will be an effective researcher; the aim of these Guidelines is to assist you to reflect on good practice in supervising research students. The Guidelines are not intended to be prescriptive nor exhaustive, just to indicate what, within the literature, has been identified as good practice. But some of the matters covered do relate to University requirements, and this document should be read in conjunction with the University’s Guidelines for the Supervisors of Research Students, which sets out the formal framework for research supervision.

The Guidelines attempt to set out good practice in relation to fifteen key components of research supervision, namely:

1. establishing and maintaining a professional relationship with the student
2. helping to induct them into research
3. where appropriate, assisting with the choice of a topic
4. where appropriate, helping them devise a research proposal and plan
5. supporting the initial stages of the research project
6. encouraging students to write
7. assisting with academic problems with the research
8. assisting with personal and social problems affecting the research
9. giving feedback and reviewing the progress of the research project
10. monitoring the progress of the research
11. advising on drafts of the thesis
12. advising on submission
13. assisting on preparation for examination
14. assisting with career development, networking, and publication
15. working with co-supervisors

1. Establishing and Maintaining a Professional Relationship with the Research Student

The relationship between a supervisor and a research student is a professional one, and it is vital that it is started off on an appropriate footing. As Delamont et al. (1997, p 14) have put it:

"You need to sort out a good working relationship with your supervisee. Relationships have to be worked at and discussed, because most of the later problems stem from a failure to set out the expectations both parties have for
One way to do this is to establish, implicitly or explicitly, an agreement between the supervisor and the student setting out expectations of each other, as in the example below.

The research student agrees to:
- turn up on time for supervisions and give as much notice as possible of cancellations
- be properly prepared
- write regularly and share the draft materials
- maintain the highest standards of academic conduct, as set out in paragraph 10 of the University’s Guidelines for Research Students
- maintain contact
- undertake the tasks agreed to the best of their ability within the allotted time

The research supervisor agrees to:
- hold regular supervisions and give as much notice as possible of cancellations
- read work submitted promptly
- give written feedback.

Both agree to:
- treat supervision in a business-like way with an agenda
- keep records of supervisions detailing what was discussed, what targets were agreed, and when they were to be achieved by.

Supervisors may wish to go further than this and indicate more precisely what they can or cannot do to assist the student. So, the supervisor may say that he or she will:
- help with the choice of a topic
- advise on sources for the literature search
- advise on methodology
- facilitate data collection in terms of access or equipment
- discuss results
- read drafts on grounds of substance
- advise on submission

But he or she will not:
- undertake the actual research
- write or re-draft chapters
- ‘proof’ the thesis

At this stage also, you may wish to make it clear in what circumstances you would or would not expect credit to be given in any publications arising from the research.

While this process of establishing a professional relationship is important for all students, it may be particularly helpful to international students, who may have culturally defined notions of what they can expect from their supervisor. As Ryan (2000, p. 69) has put it:

‘...international students...are likely to expect a hierarchical relationship with their supervisor where the supervisor exercises tight control over the research. Many international students will expect their supervisor to take the initiative and adapt a role close to being a guide and/or parent. They may expect the supervisor to make major contributions towards the research and the thesis. They will be expecting clear direction and guidance from their supervisors, whom they will hold in great esteem, and they often have very high expectations of the relationship.’

In such cases, it can be useful to spend some time discussing student’s expectations of the role of the supervisor and of what you can offer in order to clarify the relationship. Such discussions should emphasise the additional support available to international students in the early stages of their research (see below), as well as the need for them to take the initiative in undertaking and completing the research project.

By these means, clear expectations should be established for what is to come at the start of the research. But, as with any relationship, the supervisor-supervisee one changes, or should change, over time. Ideally, it should start as a master/mistress-apprentice relationship and end up as almost equal colleagues.

Clearly, this implies a process of development over the course of the supervision from the supervisor playing a directive role and setting tasks for the student to do at the start towards encouraging the student to become an autonomous researcher and increasingly recognizing their capacity to make an independent contribution to knowledge and understanding in the subject. However, as Cryer (2000, pp 5-7) has pointed out, this does not happen automatically. Students may need to be weaned away from dependence upon their supervisors, while the latter may need to adjust to the idea of the student abandoning the nest and beginning to fly on their own. So, it is important for supervisors to periodically check where the balance lies, whether it is appropriate for this stage of the research, and if not what can be done to correct it.

### Reflecting on Practice

**What methods do you use to establish a professional relationship with the student at the start of the programme? What is the appropriate balance between dependence and independence over the course of the programme? How often do you review that balance? What can you do if it is wrong?**

#### 2. Inducting Students into Research

Many students coming through to research will have undertaken short research projects either as undergraduates or as postgraduates, and will be required to undertake a training in research during their first year of study. There is also now a substantial literature on undertaking a research degree to which students can be directed, of which recent examples are Cryer (2000), Leonard (2001), Phillips and Pugh (2000), and Wisker (2001). However, while previous experience and the literature yield insights into research, they may not prepare students for it fully, in five respects.

Firstly, students are often still not fully aware of what they are letting themselves in for, i.e. a research degree. Again, the point is well made by one of the PhD students interviewed by Delamont et al. (1997, p 16):

‘A lot of mistakes I’ve made are the result of not asking questions and people not putting me right. They presume I must know… I didn’t know the PhD was meant to be an argument… [that] it’s meant to say something. I thought it was one of those old-fashioned monographs, a collection of information. When I was an undergraduate I used to think a PhD was one of those articles you read in the journals, a 10,000 word article, I used to think they were PhDs.’

Clearly, if the student’s supervisor had explained what a PhD was, pointed the student in the direction of a few successful theses (see University Guidelines for Supervisors of Research Students 3(a) (ii)), and discussed why they were successful, the mistakes which marred the student’s experience could...
have been avoided.

The second way in which students may be unprepared for research stems from the way in which it is written up in books and papers in journals, namely as a seamless progression from initial idea to an addition to knowledge and understanding. But what is published is only the visible part of the iceberg; the other nine-tenths – the ideas that were discarded, the investigations that ended up in blind alleys, the correlations that were in the wrong direction, the experiments that gave negative results, the sheer fluke that led to the substantive advance – rarely see the light of day. So it is scarcely surprising that many students expect their research to progress without incident and, when it does not, blame themselves.

Here, the supervisor has a key role in forewarning and forearming. This may take the form of directing students towards accounts of research as it really happened, pairing them with students further down the line to discuss the problems they had experienced, or even self-disclosure by the supervisor. What can be useful is for a supervisor to keep all of the materials relating to a particular research project from first scribbles to final paper, and take the student through the process, disasters as well as triumphs. Such exercises can prepare them for what is to come, and can have the added bonus of demonstrating how to go about problem-solving in your subject.

Thirdly, students may not be aware or fully aware of what is entailed in maintaining the highest standards of academic conduct in undertaking their research, in particular with regard to the fabrication of results or plagiarism. A few minutes spent discussing Section 10 of the University’s Guidelines for Research Students with the student can be helpful, and it is recommended that this be done in the comparable Guidelines for Supervisors (3(c)).

Fourthly, the Guidelines for Supervisors (3(d)) also recommend that supervisors spend some time at the start of the project discussing the storage and retention of research data with their students. Failure to store and retain data can, at worst, mean that experiments etc have to be replicated, at best that progress is halted until missing data is eventually found. In this context, it can also be useful to encourage students right from the start to take full references for everything that they read in such a form that they can later be easily transferred to the text or the bibliography of their thesis. Again, this can save many hours hunting for page numbers etc. at the writing-up stage.

Fifthly, the University (Guidelines for Supervisors, p 3) makes supervisors responsible for ensuring that research students follow agreed University and, where appropriate, school health and safety policies and procedures, and these should also form part of the student's induction into research.

Again, on international students, it is worth quoting Ryan, (2000, p 73):

‘A common problem is that supervisors assume too much of student’s research knowledge. But some international students will have very little knowledge of how to conduct research....’

Supervisors might consider going through one of the texts described above (e.g. Cryer 2000) with international students, and devising mini-research projects designed to enhance their experience of research.

Reflecting on Practice
Do you ascertain at the start of the programme what the student knows about the degree they are about to embark upon? How to you make them aware? How do you alert the student to the trials and tribulations of research? How can you ensure that international students have an adequate induction into research?

3. Assisting with the Choice of a Topic

In many cases, and particularly in engineering and the sciences, students are often recruited to research a particular topic which has been pre-defined by the supervisor (see e.g. Delamont et al. (2000), Becher et al. (1994)). But, particularly in the arts, humanities and social sciences, students are recruited on the basis of their interest in working by a broadly defined area of the subject, which has to be narrowed down sooner or later to a specific topic.

Bright students who have sailed through their previous careers with effortless brilliance may have unrealistic expectations of what they can achieve in their research degrees.

These can often be adjusted by asking them to look through the titles of MPhil’s or PhDs in their subjects which illustrate the narrowness of their field (if not all) research topics. But even when they have abandoned seeking a cure for the common cold or a fundamental change in our interpretation of civilisation and adopted a more realistic project, they will still need help and guidance.

Moses (1992, pp 11-12) has characterized the process of selecting a topic as involving the five stages of (i) determining a general area of interest (ii) critically reviewing the literature (iii) identifying potential ‘triggers’ for projects (iv) evaluating their suitability, and (v) choosing at least a starting topic.

While the general area of interest should be known, supervisors can assist students by disclosure – talking through their own experiences – and/or exercises designed to model the rest of the process. Students can be asked to read (say) a review article (which can provide valuable training in critical evaluation) and asked to identify a couple of possible ‘triggers’ for research projects.

A supervision can then be devoted to discussing the key questions relating to suitability. Is this topic worth doing?; how, in principle, could it be done?; could it be done within the time available?; what additional knowledge and skills would be required to tackle it?; would it sustain interest?; if completed, how might it meet the requirements for the award? With, hopefully, an understanding of the criteria, students can then be asked to do this ‘for real’ and write brief reports, upon which supervisors can give oral or written feedback. Eventually, this iterative process should lead to the identification of a topic which will, at least, form a focus for starting the research.

Reflecting on Practice
Do you provide students with a framework for choosing a topic? Would disclosure of your own experiences be helpful? Can you identify review papers in your subject which could be used to generate topics for exercises?

4. Producing an Initial Research Proposal and Plan

Again, and particularly in science and engineering, many research students are recruited to implement research proposals which have already been planned and scheduled. But, where the project is not pre-determined and planned for them, students need to actively manage their research projects. Otherwise, they can drift for months during the first year of research, and this is a major cause of drop out and also of non-completion within three or four years. Given the financial pressures on students – particularly international ones funded only for the stated duration of the programme – and of course Research Council sanctions on subjects with low completion rates within three or four years (see e.g. Joint et al. 2002), it is vital that they are clear about what they are doing and when they should be aiming to do it by. For these reasons, the University’s Guidelines for Supervisors (3(a)) strongly recommend that supervisors should work with students to produce a research proposal and a plan.

With regard to the research proposal, graduate schools may have guidelines for writing a research proposal, or supervisors may be left to come up with their own. The latter can consist of a fairly simple series of questions to be answered by the student. For example: What is the topic?; Why is it important?; What have others written on it?; What would the research seek to add?; What method or methods would be useful in undertaking the research?; How could the research be...
can have. If, by these means, students can be assisted by supervisors to between time and task and in enabling them to plan their own effective in stimulating students to think about the relationship and to re-plan the research. This technique can be extremely to discuss them, and to re-plan the research. This technique can be extremely effective in stimulating students to think about the relationship between time and task and in enabling them to plan their own research. If, by these means, students can be assisted by supervisors to produce research proposals and research plans, the supervisor has at least one other key responsibility, namely to encourage students to frequently revisit and update both. Research topics can change markedly over the course of a project, and research plans need to be modified in response to this and other factors. Indeed, it can be beneficial to periodically devote a supervision to discussing and updating the research proposal and the research plan, so that both supervisor and student are clear about where the research has got to, and what needs to be done to complete it.

### Reflecting on Practice

Does your graduate school have guidelines for research proposals? If not, can you supply your students with a simple guide? Is there a good research proposal you could show to research students? Could you develop research plans for discussion with students?

5. **Supporting the Initial Stages of the Research Project**

Again in science and engineering, students may be able to step into ready-made research projects. But, in disciplines where students have created their own research project, they are then faced with the detailed preparatory work on the literature, the methodology, and the design of the research. All of these can pose serious problems for students at the start of their projects. On the literature, students may need help in finding it if they are not familiar with the location of sources in the field, with learning how to read it critically, with note-taking, and with referencing. On methodology, there are established and relatively less contested approaches in many engineering and science subjects, but in the arts and social sciences in particular students are faced with a range of different potential approaches and may have to grapple with a range of difficult philosophical, theoretical, and empirical matters. In virtually all subjects, designing a major research project is a difficult exercise for the uninitiated, with each potential design associated with opportunities and limitations which can have profound implications for outcomes. Such matters are dealt with in general through graduate school research training programmes, and it is clearly important for supervisors to be aware of the content of these in ascertaining the support needs of their students. If graduate school programmes do not cover these matters, then supervisors may have to point students in the direction of other courses or modules available within the institution or provide a programme of study. But even if they do cover them, the supervisor still has a role to play in relating general features of literature evaluation, methodology, and research design to the student's topic. For example, setting an exercise for students to find a key reference in their field, produce a critical review, evidence it from their notes, and cite sources correctly, can help them to evaluate the literature; pointing students in the direction of good discussions of methodologies in books, theses and papers in their topic area can assist with the adoption of a methodology; and asking for short briefing papers on the advantages and disadvantages of different designs can provide a basis for discussion and clarification of the options. By these means, students can be supported through what can be the very difficult initial stages of their research project. The avoidance of mistakes at this early stage, e.g. in the design of the research, can save much time and grief further down the line.

### Reflecting on Practice

Is there a training programme for research students in your graduate school or faculty? Does it fully support the student to acquire the necessary knowledge and skills in terms of evaluation of the literature, methodology and research design? How can you assist the student to acquire these in the context of their project?

6. **Encouraging Students to Write**

As students begin to make progress with their projects, they need to be encouraged to put pen to paper as soon as possible, for four reasons. Firstly, it enables them to keep records of what they have done from the start to serve as a basis for later work. Secondly, it encourages them to reflect on what they have done so far and think about where they will go from here. Thirdly, it gives the supervisor the chance to see what has been done, and to advise them about how to proceed. Fourthly, it gets students into the discipline of academic writing at an early stage rather than leaving it until later when it is more difficult to acquire.

But, as most experienced supervisors will testify, students are frequently extremely reluctant to produce written work. Research (see e.g. Murray 2002) suggests that there are two major factors which constrain research students from writing. One relates primarily to lack of experience of writing regularly at all, of producing longish pieces of work, or of producing academic writing with its demands of precision, clarity, organization and explicit structure. The other factor is confidence. Whereas, as undergraduates or postgraduates on taught programmes, students outlined and discussed the work of other people, as research students their writing becomes, or should become, a presentation of their own views, ideas, thoughts, etc. This can leave students feeling very exposed and, particularly if their standard is published work, very dissatisfied with what they have achieved. For these reasons, they may be psychologically reluctant to write. Supervisors can help students overcome these problems in a number of ways. With regard to writing regularly, Blaxter et al. (1996, pp 59-57) suggest that students should be encouraged to keep a research diary on a daily basis recording what they have done, time spent on it, analysis, and speculation. This gets students into the habit of writing regularly, recording, and reflecting, and gives them a basis upon which to construct larger pieces of work. With regard to writing longer pieces, supervisors can help students to make the task more manageable. So, initially, they might request a one-page abstract of the chapter setting out its aim (purpose), content (what it would cover), and possible conclusions (what it would say). With that thought through and discussed, the next stage would be to ask for a synopsis fleshing out the abstract and setting out headings and sub-headings to be used. Then students can be encouraged to fill in the framework piece by piece until they have a draft chapter.
With regard to academic writing, students can be variously referred to books on the subject (e.g. Dunleavy (2003), (Murray 2002)), given examples of such writing from the literature in their field, or even paired with a mentor in the form of a student further on with their research who will undertake to read drafts and suggest improvements.

In terms of overcoming psychological reluctance to write, supervisors can, as (Murray 2002) has suggested, reduce anxiety levels by giving the student explicit permission to submit a ‘messy’ draft for comment on the understanding that it will be treated as a first stab and not as the definitive submission. Further, it can be worth pointing out to students that virtually all contributions to knowledge and understanding start off as fairly rough-hewn stones which are then polished usually by several sets of hands before they become the perfect gems of publications. As suggested earlier, the message can be reinforced by showing students earlier drafts of supervisors’ own papers.

Again, here it is worth considering the particular problems faced by non-native speakers of English. To quote Ryan (2000, p 74):

‘Many international postgraduate students will have had very little experience in any kind of extended writing, and may have previously only been required to take lecture notes. They may therefore resort to an oral style, or may use writing styles that are favoured in their own country. [For example]... The use of proverbs, stories and literary illusions... are commonly used in Asian and African writing to demonstrate one’s educational level and accomplishment, to win the reader over to the author’s point of view, and to establish credibility. Classical sayings or poetic phrases will be used to make the writing look “well-educated” and to establish empathy. The writing process takes a more circuitous approach, where the reader is gradually taken along a journey where the argument, or the main thesis, is only found at the very end. The thesis will begin by saying what the topic isn’t before writing about what it is.’

This, of course, is the antithesis of academic writing as practised in the West, and here there is a particular need to help international students to appreciate what is involved and help them to adjust.

By these means, supervisors can try to fulfil one of their principal responsibilities, encouraging students to write early and often.

### Reflecting on Practice

**Are your students writing early enough? Are they writing regularly enough? If not, how can you assist them to overcome the barriers to writing? How can you assist non-native English speaking students to improve their writing?**

### 7. Assisting with Academic Problems

Research is, as argued earlier, an inherently difficult activity and it can almost be guaranteed that, at some point, students will be faced with problems. Such problems may include, for example, exploring the highways and the byways of the topic and drifting too far away from the original focus of the research, setbacks in collecting data, inconsistencies in findings, problems with the status of results — the list is endless.

The appearance of such problems can pose a dilemma for supervisors. Should research students be left to dig their own way out of the hole? Or should the supervisor pull them out, dust them down, and send them on their way again? The first way accords with the view that a research degree should be entirely the student’s own work and that the supervisor’s role is to provide self-reliance, the second recognizes that the researcher is inexperienced and that he or she needs help to recover the position and complete the thesis.

This is a matter of fine judgement, and the answer varies from case to case and from supervisor to supervisor. But it can be suggested that, if at all possible, supervisors should try the middle way, namely suggesting a way in which the student can, by their own efforts, resolve the crisis.

Again, there is a good example of such thinking in Delamont et al. (1997, p 77), in this case covering the familiar scenario where a research student has collected a vast amount of data and is unable to organize in a coherent way, i.e. the student is ‘drowning in data’. Rather than leaving them to flounder or going out with the lifeboat, Delamont et al suggest that the supervisor should arrange for the student to prepare a seminar paper or write a working paper re-stating the central questions of the research, establishing what needs to be evidenced to answer them, and re-evaluating the contribution that the thesis will make to knowledge and understanding. This, they argue, absolves the supervisor from direct intervention while providing an opportunity for students to re-focus the research, discard extraneous material, and hopefully avoid writing the ‘everything but the kitchen sink’ thesis which might be referred because of inadequate discrimination of evidence.

### Reflecting on Practice

**What sorts of academic problems are research students likely to come up against in your subject? In what ways do you think that you could help without compromising the independence of the research?**

### 8. Assisting with Non-Academic Problems

Research students can experience non-academic problems which can affect their research. At Newcastle, primary supervisors are also personal tutors to their graduate students, and hence the role can extend to assisting with personal and social problems as well. Supervisors thus need to be equipped to deal with problems in the same way as for undergraduate tutees although it is worth noting that a number of schools have established additional arrangements for support. In addition, there is a postgraduate tutor in each faculty. Of course, there is also a range of University services for postgraduate research students with which supervisors need to be familiar, and which are set out elsewhere in this Handbook.

In addition to particular problems, it may be noted that one of the most consistent findings of the research literature on research students (see the summary in Delamont et al. 1997, p 95) is that they suffer, to a greater or lesser degree, from intellectual and social isolation. But, as the authors point out, while a degree of intellectual isolation is inherent in undertaking an original research project, ‘...there is no reason for this...to be accompanied by social or emotional loneliness’ and indeed this can be detrimental to the success of the research. So it is important for supervisors to ensure that there are opportunities for students to mix with others. These might include a regular postgraduate seminar, a postgraduate society, common development and training programmes, or participation in conferences or professional associations.

Again, in this context, it is worth stressing that particular consideration needs to be given to supporting international research students. They are more likely to feel socially and culturally isolated than home students, and they may find it more difficult for ask for support from supervisors or to make friends with fellow students. It is, as Ryan (2000 p 81) has argued, important to ensure that staff take an interest in the well-being of international students and assist them to join social networks. Also, where international students are accompanied by their families, consideration also needs to be given to involving spouses and children in social activities. They can feel marooned in an alien environment, and it is important to include them in school social activities and point them in the direction of relevant institutional societies and clubs.
9. Giving Feedback

Once students are writing and showing work in progress to you, you need to give them feedback. As Brown and Atkins (1988, pp 134-37) have pointed out, students need feedback for four main reasons, namely:

- to enable them to appreciate standards
  Feedback gives the student a feeling for the standards against which their work will be judged. Students are unlikely at the start or in the early stages in particular to be fully aware of the standards that they are expected to attain (see Becher at the start or in the early stages in particular to be fully aware of the standards that they are expected to attain. As Phillips and Pugh (2000, pp 23-24) have put it:
  ‘[Students] cannot get a PhD unless [they] know what the standards are...it is a vital responsibility of [the] supervisor to ensure that [they] are given every opportunity to become familiar with appropriate professional standards. It is only through this that [they] will be able to recognise and achieve them.’

  Hopefully, as students learn from feedback, they should begin to internalize the standards and become able to critically assess their own work. This, of course, is part of becoming a successful researcher.

- to improve their skills
  Feedback can also assist in developing students’ skills, including methodological skills (e.g., research design, data collection, data analysis, data interpretation) and writing skills. Students may or may not have the expertise to design and implement their research projects, and one of the functions of feedback is to advise on these matters and, in the case of shortfalls, assist the students to acquire relevant skills. Similarly, students’ skills in academic writing are likely to require development, and this is part of the function of feedback.

- to give them a sense of achievement
  A further, and often neglected, reason for feedback is to give the student a sense of achievement. As Brown and Atkins (1988, p 136) have put it:
  ‘Students need to know that their work is valued and that their supervisors are genuinely interested in it.’

  Being encouraged or praised is crucial to motivating students, particularly in the early stages of the project before (hopefully) success becomes apparent and becomes an internalized driver in itself.

- to deepen their understanding
  The final reason is to assist students to deepen and develop their understanding of the problem or topic that they are researching through discussion at all of the stages from inception through to completed drafts. But, if these objectives are to be achieved, feedback must be given in appropriate ways that will elicit a positive rather than a negative response from the student.

  Suggestions include:
  - thinking about an appropriate setting for the feedback
    The setting for the feedback can have some bearing on how it is received. If you sit behind your desk with the student on the other side – particularly if they are on a lower level – then the signal is one of formal interaction between a superior and an inferior. If you are side by side in armchairs, the signal is more one of a discussion between colleagues.

  - opening by setting out expectations for the session
    It can be useful at the start to set out your expectations for the session. In particular, you should make it clear that the primary objective is to enable further progress in the research project (see Phillips and Pugh (2000, p 174)). It also can be helpful here to make it clear that, where appropriate, you will expect students to challenge your views and opinions, and that this is a normal and essential part of the process.

  - summarizing your understanding of the material submitted
    One of the most useful things that a supervisor can do is to summarize your understanding of the material that the student has submitted. ‘So it seems to me that the central thrust of what you are saying is....’

  - checking your understanding with the student
    Once you have summarized, it can be very useful just to check that your understanding is the same as that of the student – ‘Have I got that right?’ This not only reassures students that you are taking their work seriously, but offers an opportunity to correct any misapprehensions at the start of the session.

  - identifying the strengths of the work
    You can then identify what you saw as the strengths of the work submitted, which is an opportunity for praise. ‘What I thought was really interesting was... what I most enjoyed reading was...’

  - identifying the areas for attention
    You can identify the areas for attention in ways that are constructive and positive rather than destructive and negative, e.g., ‘why did you try to solve the problem using method X rather than method Y?’ rather than ‘Didn’t you realize that you could have avoided these difficulties with method Y?’

  - inviting the student to respond
    Once you have identified the areas, then you can ask the student to respond. Here, it is very important that you allow the student to engage with the matters that you have raised, and in particular it must be recognized that they will need time to respond to queries about their work. You must also be prepared to listen carefully and check that the student has understood the point being made.

  - summarizing the discussion
    When the points have been exhausted, then it is important to summarize the discussion. You may try to draw the threads together and then check it with the student or, alternatively, you may ask the student to summarize.

  - maintaining a record
    Finally, for the benefit of both the student and yourself, there should be an agreed written record. Normally, this would be written by the student, copied to you, if necessary amended, and then agreed jointly.

  By extending the work of Partington et al. (1993, p 78) to the case of supervisor feedback, it can be said that you should avoid acting:
  - as an inquisitor
    This supervisor behaves like a TV interviewer quizzing a politician during an election campaign, rapidly shooting out hostile questions, interrupting the answers, and generally trying to score points. Such an approach may intimidate the students so that he or she is unable to respond or anger them to the extent that the session becomes an adversarial confrontation.

  - as a committee person
    The committee person takes the student through the material page by page questioning each matter as it arises rather than synthesising points into key issues relating to the

---

Reflecting on Practice
What additional support is available to research students in your school, the graduate school, and the University? Do you actively seek to encourage your research students to mix with others? Do you pay particular attention to the needs of international students and, where appropriate, their families?
research.
- as a hobby horse rider
  This supervisor has strong feelings or prejudices about one area of the submitted work and keeps returning to questions on this while neglecting other aspects of the research.
- as a kite flyer
  The kite-flyer has identified a – usually fairly tenuous – link between the work submitted and another subject and persists in exploring this to the detriment of the substance of the research.
- a remaniscener
  This supervisor continually regales the student with stories of their own research career to the detriment of feedback on the material submitted.

10. Monitoring Progress

Clearly, one of the key tasks of the supervisor is to formally monitor the progress of the research project. This normally has three aspects, namely monitoring progress with the student, monitoring it in line with graduate school requirements, and monitoring in accordance with University requirements.

With regard to monitoring progress with the student, the University requires that supervisors should hold a formal meeting at least once per term with the student to review their progress and that the details should be recorded (Guidelines for Supervisors, 5). Such formal supervisions should be undertaken in a business-like way, with a date, time and agenda agreed with the student. Supervisors should ensure that, as far as possible, they should not be disturbed while they are meeting with the student.

Both to structure the meeting and to provide a record, it can be helpful to use Appendix C from the Research Training Portfolio.

The pro-forma or similar can be completed by the supervisor and/or the student, but should be signed by both as a permanent record of the meeting.

In addition to formally monitoring progress with the student, supervisors normally also have to meet graduate school requirements for progress reports. So, for example, the Faculty of Medical Sciences Graduate School reviews progress at 9, 18 and 31 months into the research project, and supervisors are required to send reports to independent panels at those junctures.

Finally on monitoring, it is currently a University requirement (Guidelines, Para 6) that supervisors submit an annual report on the student’s programme of work using the University’s standard form. This should be submitted to the graduate school administration, which forwards it to the relevant Postgraduate Sub-Dean.

11. Assisting Students to Complete

After students have persevered through academic and possibly personal problems and completed the basic research, they then enter a new tunnel called ‘writing up’. While students may have conscientiously written up draft sections and chapters as they have gone along, they now face the task of putting it together as a whole and creating a thesis.

This would be easy if it were just a matter of throwing together what has already been written and adding linking sections, but demand rather more. As Barnes (cited Blaxter et al. (1996, p27)) has pointed out, ‘...a thesis is far more than a passive record of [the] research and generally involves presenting an argument or point of view. In other words it must say something and be substantiated with reasoned argument and evidence’.

Students can find it difficult to translate their work into a thesis, and here the supervisor may be able to assist by giving them a framework within which to work. One suggestion (see e.g. Cryer 2000, Taylor 2002) is to ask students to think of themselves as explorers who have undertaken a journey and who are writing a guidebook for others to follow.

As guides, they need to explain where they started from, what other guides they read, why they decided to undertake the journey at all, why they went off in a particular direction, what their route was subsequently, what they discovered on the way, where they arrived at the end of the journey, how it differed from the start, and where they would go in the future. They can be asked to map this on a few sides of paper, thinking carefully about what information must be imparted to enable someone to follow, what should be imparted, and what may be interesting but not strictly necessary.

Supervisors can then give feedback on the map, both on the overall clarity of the guidebook and upon the priorities assigned to particular stages in the journey. By this means, students can begin to construct a coherent outline of the thesis.

Once the general lines are clear, students can then be asked to fill in more details of sections of the journey, and then subsections until they have a detailed guidebook. This can then be translated into the structure for a thesis, e.g. starting point (introduction), existing guidebooks (literature review), reasons (triggers for the research), direction (methodology), route and discoveries on the way (substantive research chapters), arrival (analysis and results), difference from the starting point (contribution to knowledge) and future (where research should go).

If, by these or other means, students can be assisted to establish a framework for their thesis, they then still have to write it. Here, supervisors can give guidance at least upon four key matters, namely communication, style, drafting, and managing the writing process.

A thesis is, of course, a form of communication, and it is necessary to consider in advance the audience to which it is addressed and how students might meet their needs. Here Cryer (2000, p 178) has some excellent advice which students can be given or pointed towards:

‘The crucially important audience for theses are external examiners. Think of them as individuals who are exceptionally busy and grossly under-paid and who therefore have to read theses quickly. They will expect them to be well-structured and to be argued coherently to make the case for certain solutions to specific research problems. Irrelevancies will irritate, as will having to tease out meaning that research students should have extracted themselves. Think of them also as individuals who are very able and experienced in the general area, which means that the background material should be as concise as is consistent with showing that it is known.

However, no external examiner can be an expert in your work. By the time you finalise your thesis, you and you alone are the world’s expert. So the aspects that make your work significant and original and worthy of a PhD...need to be argued coherently; each step needs to be spelled out, the outcomes must be stated unambiguously, and all their implications identified and discussed in depth.’
With regard to style, it will of course be expected that the thesis is written up in 'academic writing', and it has already been suggested that students should be pointed towards the literature and to exemplars of the style appropriate to their work.

In terms of drafting, even with a framework students can find this a daunting task. One way of assisting them is to encourage them to write their first draft 'as it comes', and then work with you to polish and re-polish it into its final form.

Again, this can pose a dilemma for a supervisor in so far as there can be a fine line between helping the student clarify what they want to say and writing it for them. There is no simple solution to this dilemma, although it can sometimes be avoided by directing students to look at other work in which similar problems have been overcome.

In the context of advising on drafts, it is worth noting that the University's Guidelines for research supervisors (paragraph 12) state that the supervisor should not act as a proof reader and should make this clear to the student.

Last, but by no means least, students have to exercise a high degree of self-discipline to complete the thesis, particularly within a short period of time. It can be useful for supervisors to bring their students' attention to what Delamont et al. (1997, p. 121) have described as the four 'golden rules' of writing, namely:

- the more they write, the easier it gets
- if they write every day, it becomes a habit
- tiny bits of writing add up to a lot of writing
- the longer they don't write, the more difficult it is to get back in the habit.

12. Advising on Submission

The completion of the first serious draft is usually an immense relief for students. But it can be a major headache for supervisors, who need to advise students whether what they have done has the potential to meet the standards for the award, and if not what needs to be done to bring it up to scratch. Giving such advice to students can be particularly difficult at the start of a supervisor's career, when their own experience may only be as an examinee and they are unsure about what is looked for by an examiner.

In such cases, the starting point for supervisors is to try to determine the criteria for success or failure. Here, published sources may include professional associations which have set out criteria for research degrees (see for example. British Psychological Society/UCoSDA, 1996; Royal Economic Society 1992; Royal Society of Chemistry 1995) or failing that more general statements of criteria (see e.g. Partington et al. (1993)). A further useful source may be examiners' reports, which generally list categories of excellence.

In the absence of hard information, tales of vivas being used to inflict unnaturally cruel punishment on research students abound with the result that, as Delamont et al. (1997, p. 148) have put it:

'The student may well fear and dread the [viva] examination. Even when the student is outstandingly competent, and however excellent the thesis may be, the process of examination is a stressful one...most [candidates] feel worried by the indeterminacy of the viva'

Here, the supervisor can play a role, in three main ways:

- Firstly, by de-mystifying the viva through explaining its purposes, procedures, and outcomes. In the case of Newcastle, these are set out in the University's Handbook for the Examiners of Research Degrees (2003), and it can be helpful for supervisors to take students through the relevant parts.
- Secondly, by indicating what the student should do to prepare in terms of re-reading their thesis, keeping up to date with the literature, and preparing for questions.
- Thirdly, and perhaps most helpfully, supervisors can arrange for students to have a short mock viva in which...
colleagues who are experienced as examiners question them on a key part of their thesis and afterwards give feedback on their performance. Such an opportunity to 'taste' what is in store is invaluable in enabling students to prepare themselves both intellectually and psychologically for what is to come.

**Reflecting on Practice**

Do your research students have any previous experience of vivas? How do they feel about them? How can you help them to prepare?

14. Assisting with Career Development, Networking, and Publication

It is good practice for supervisors to assist students with career development, networking, and the publication of their work.

At one time, students undertaking a research degree, particularly a PhD, were destined predominantly for the groves of academe, and career development took the form of socializing them into the values and rituals of the relevant academic 'tribe' (see e.g. Delamot et al. (2000)). But it is no longer the case that successful research students necessary become academics – a majority do not – and even those who do follow an academic career require a wider portfolio of skills. Part of the job of the supervisor is, from the very start of the studentship, to encourage the student to actively acquire the key skills necessary to give them an edge in the labour market.

A full list of key skills is available from the Centre for Academic Development, also offers support to supervisors on how to develop them (see www.careers.ncl.ac.uk/academics). While all skills are important, it is perhaps worth highlighting one, namely the need to encourage research students to acquire the skills to give effective oral presentations. Such skills are vital in the academic context (a number of faculties include oral presentations as part of their procedures for progression and of course students need them to make presentations to seminars and conferences) and in employment. It is worth making inquiries about whether training in presentation skills forms part of the faculty research training programme, directing students' attention towards the relevant literature (e.g. Cryer (2000)), and offering opportunities for students to give mini-presentations and receive feedback.

Under the heading of skills, supervisors also need to encourage students to record the skills that they acquire over the course of their research programme for later use as evidence to prospective employers. In some graduate schools, e.g. Medical Sciences, the acquisition of skills has been formalized by requiring students to maintain Personal Development Records, but in others it may be up to the supervisor to prompt the student to acquire record skills the development of their skills. Assistance for supervisors in encouraging students to do this is available from the Careers Service.

A second function of supervisors can be to encourage students to network within the subject community and to provide opportunities for them to do so. Academia is heavily dependent upon networking informally and formally, in the latter case through professional associations and conferences (see Blaxter et al. (1998, pp 55-71)). Students need to be encouraged to establish their own informal networks of academic colleagues in their subject areas, and to join in professional networks, e.g. the postgraduate sections of professional associations. This can be important for their research, as a counterweight to isolation, and in acquiring networking skills which will stand them in good stead in any career.

A third function of supervisors is, as soon as it is practical to do so, to encourage students to publish their work in scholarly journals. Publications, particularly those during the course of a research degree, can help variously to mark out their academic territory, bring them into contact with others working in the same field, boost their self-esteem, give them a better platform for applying for jobs and, last but not least, enhance school publication rates. But students do need guidance from their supervisors about how to write for publication, which journals or publishers to aim for, and how to go about submitting a paper or a book.

Research students' writing for publications, of course, raises the issue of whose names should go on papers submitted to journals etc. Here, practice varies considerably between and within disciplines. In some the convention is that the supervisor's name automatically goes on the paper as, if different, does the name of the person who has obtained the funding for the research. This can and does lead to friction if research students feel that they have done the vast majority of work for the paper but are effectively credited with an equal share of the authorship. One way around this which has been used in some subjects is to have a footnote indicating the relative contributions of the authors, say X the supervisor 20 per cent, and Y the research student 80 per cent.

**Reflecting on Practice**

Do you encourage students to think about career development at the start of their studentship? Do you encourage them to assemble an appropriate portfolio of skills for employment over the course of their studentship? Do you assist them to acquire effective presentation skills? Do you encourage students to network and provide opportunities for them to do so? Do you encourage students to publish? What is the relevant policy in your discipline for the attribution of authorship in publications?

15. Working with Supervisory Teams

So far, these Guidelines have predominantly been concerned with good practice of the main supervisor. This is very much in line with the historical model of the British PhD which has normally involved undertaking a research project on a narrowly-focused topic within a single discipline or sub-discipline. For this reason, the main requirement for research supervision has been the possession of the highly-specific subject expertise necessary to be able to guide and support students' work within their chosen field of enquiry. Within any particular university, such expertise has normally resided in a single member of staff, and consequently the dominant mode of research supervision has been one supervisor to one student.

In recent years, however, there have been strong pressures, not least from the research councils, for research degrees to become multidisciplinary and/or involve a mix of academic research and practical application in an industrial or commercial or professional context. Given this, requirements for research supervisors have broadened significantly to include expertise from a range of relevant disciplines and sub-disciplines and/or industrial and commercial experience. Such expertise may not normally reside within a single member of staff, with the consequence that, increasingly, students have more than one supervisor, i.e. there is a supervisory team.

But this shift has also been apparent in older forms of doctoral studies, including traditional PhDs, where team supervision has become much more common (see e.g. Joint Funding Councils (2002)).

The reason why co-supervision is becoming all but ubiquitous is the perceived benefits that it offers to both supervisors and students. The former can offer each other mutual support and learn from each other's disciplines and experience, while students have two sources of support and advice for their research. So, for example, a recent student survey by the Wellcome Trust (cited Frame and Allen (2002, p 101)) found that co-supervision was valued:

'...primarily to ensure accessibility at any time to at least one senior researcher with knowledge and involvement in the research and as a back-up, providing a second person or team, with whom ideas could be discussed.'

But, as any reader of the student-based literature on supervision by committee in the US (see e.g. Peters (1997), Research Student Handbook. August 2006. Page 88
Fitzpatrick et al. (1998) will be aware, it can also lead to problems with potentially serious consequences for doctoral students. Co-supervisors may disagree as to the aims and objectives of the research project which, as Cryer (2000, p. 70) suggests:

‘...puts tremendous burdens on the research student who has to integrate the understanding of both and satisfy both. The research student all too often ends up satisfying neither, and each co-supervisor can tacitly abdicate responsibility to the other.’

So, if there is co-supervision, it is good practice for supervisors to spend some time discussing how to establish a professional relationship with each other, as well as with the student. Such a discussion should encompass agreeing notions of what they are supervising, deciding they are to work with each other to integrate their own understandings of the topic and give consistent advice to students, and determining what their respective roles should be.

It should be noted that, where there are co-supervisors, it is a requirement at Newcastle that one supervisor who is a member of the academic staff should be designated as the primary supervisor, and the other as a secondary supervisor. While the University prescribes that the former should ultimately be responsible for supervising the student’s work, at present it does not offer further guidance as to precisely what the division of labour should be between the primary and secondary supervisors. Particularly in cases where the student spends part of their time outside Newcastle studying under a second supervisor, it is necessary to specify who is responsible for what. Here, a useful template which could be adapted for use at Newcastle, has been developed at City University, and is set out overleaf.

Reflected on Practice
Do you discuss the requirements for a research degree with your co-supervisor at the start of the studentship?
Do you discuss ways of resolving inter-disciplinary differences and giving consistent advice to students?
Have you and your co-supervisor clear ideas of who is responsible for what in supervising the student?

Conclusions
Being an effective researcher is a necessary condition to be a research supervisor, but it is not a sufficient one; the latter requires being an effective supervisor as well. That, in turn, involves unpacking what is involved in effectively supervising a research student, reflecting on practice, and improving it. Hopefully these Guidelines will at least give food for thought in encouraging supervisors to review their effectiveness.

References
**The internal supervisor:**

**Accountability**
- represents the institution making the award and is accountable...for the satisfactory completion of the project.
- clarifies to the student and external supervisor, prior to commencement of the research, the University’s requirements regarding scope, content, structure, timing and intellectual level of a research thesis appropriate to the target qualification.
- confirms any financial arrangements, and modus operandi for information exchange, progress review, production of interim reports and papers and relevant inter-vivos meetings.
- discusses with the student the general role of an external supervisor, and any characteristics peculiar to a supervisor for the proposed research, and requests nominations from the student.
- discusses with potential external supervisor their role, and the student’s proposed programme, and confirms any changes agreed by both supervisors and the student.
- progresses the student’s application and liaises with the School/School Senior Tutor/Director of Research and Board of Studies on the required formalities for progress and annual report.

**Knowledge**
- agrees with the student a potential research question or proposition that meets the University’s requirements and fits the student’s interests and opportunities.
- gives guidance about: the nature of research and the standards expected; the planning of the research programme; literature and sources; requisite techniques; and the avoidance of plagiarism.
- gives advice on the structure and layout of the thesis.
- ensures that the student is aware of appropriate health and safety regulations.

**Training**
- arranges training on subject-specific material and skills and generic skills as appropriate.
- arranges, as and where appropriate, for the student to talk about his/her work to staff or graduate seminars and to have practice in oral examinations.

**Time and Contact**
- reviews student submissions, and discusses content and timing with student and external supervisor, with recommendations of any general changes needed to meets the University’s standards.
- ensures that the student is made aware of any inadequacy of progress or standards of work below that generally expected, confirming this in writing to the student and arranging any supportive action necessary.

**Introduction to the Field**
- arranges, as and where appropriate, for the student to talk about his/her work to staff or graduate seminars.

**The external supervisor:**

**Accountability**
- acts as coach and counsellor to help the researcher to meet the goals agreed between them and the internal supervisor.

**Knowledge**
- possesses sufficient knowledge of the research area to provide accurate advice and guidance on the project.

**Time and Contact**
- prompts a regular review of the plan and setting agreed targets.
- possesses sufficient available time, after all other responsibilities have been taken into account, to dedicate to the needs of each individual research student he/she is supervising.
- maintains contact through regular tutorial and seminar meetings in accordance with School policy and in the light of discussion of arrangements with the student.
- is accessible to the student at other appropriate and reasonable times when he/she may need advice.
- requests written work, as appropriate, and returning such work with constructive criticism and within reasonable specified time.

**Introduction to the Field**
- takes an active role in introducing the student to other workers in the field, and the appropriate academic bodies and societies.

**Reporting**
- provides an annual report through the Senior Tutor/Director of Research to the Board of Studies on the student’s progress, with a copy to the student.
- provides comment on the research student’s learning experience and support infrastructure at the University as part of the Research Study Annual Report Exercise.

**Arrangements for Examination**
- makes the initial recommendations for examiners and makes arrangements for the student’s oral examination.

**Guidance for the Future**
- provides, in conjunction with the external supervisor, guidance, encouragement and counsel regarding the future career plans of the research student.
University Handbook for Examiners of Research Degrees by Theses

Introduction
The University is, of course, responsible for the quality and standards of postgraduate research awards made in its name. The function of examiners is to assist the University to discharge that responsibility by ensuring that the standards of postgraduate research awards at Newcastle are at least comparable to those in similar subjects in other Universities in the UK. The purpose of this Handbook is to set out (1) procedures for the nomination of examiners (2) criteria for selection (3) procedures for appointment (4) the duties of the external examiner of research degrees and (5) guidelines on good practice in the performance of those duties followed by (6) conclusions. The Handbook covers research degrees by thesis only, i.e. the degrees of MPhil, DDS, DBA, MD and PhD. For examination of the Integrated PhD programmes offered by Newcastle University please see the additional guidance at the end of the Handbook.

1. Nomination
Candidates for postgraduate research degrees must complete the minimum period of registration required for the award and formally submit the exact title of their thesis for approval to the postgraduate dean of their faculty not less than one month before they intend to submit it.

At the same time as the title is submitted, the head of the school in which the candidate is studying should nominate examiners for the thesis on the approved form for this purpose. Heads of school should consult supervisors about nominations. In the case of student candidates, heads of schools should nominate one external and one internal examiner who is not the candidate’s supervisor. In exceptional cases where the University is unable to appoint an internal examiner a second external examiner will be appointed. Where two external examiners are appointed, the dean of postgraduate studies will also appoint an independent member of University staff who will chair the viva.

2. Criteria
In making nominations, heads of school should, in consultation with supervisors, seek to identify prospective examiners who:
- are fully cognisant with standards for the award of research degrees in the subject in comparable institutions
- have significant experience and knowledge of research in the subject area within which the candidate is working
- command authority in the field and the respect of their subject community
- have played no personal part in the research undertaken by the candidate
- and, in the case of the external examiner(s), have not been a member of staff at Newcastle for at least five years
- are able and willing to examine candidates and to complete the process of examination within a specified period

Heads of school should present evidence, e.g. a short CV and a list of recent publications, that nominees fulfil these criteria. Subject to the presentation of satisfactory evidence, postgraduate deans make recommendations to Senate.

3. Appointment
Examiners are appointed by the dean of postgraduate studies on behalf of Senate. Following appointment examiners are sent:
- a letter setting out the terms and conditions of appointment
- a copy of the University's Regulations governing the relevant research degree
- the relevant Examination Conventions
- relevant information about the programme followed by the candidate
- the University's Handbook for Examiners of Research Degrees by Theses
- a copy of the work submitted by the candidate in fulfilment of the requirements for the award
- forms for reporting on the examination

4. Duties
The core duties of examiners for research degrees are:
- carefully to consider the written work submitted by candidates
- to arrive at an independent evaluation of whether the work submitted meets the standards of the award and, if not, in which aspects it is deficient
- to write a preliminary report and send it to the graduate school administration for forwarding to the relevant postgraduate dean
- to consult with other examiners and compare preliminary reports
- in the case of research degrees where vivas are optional, to decide if it is appropriate to use this means of determining a candidate’s suitability for the award
- to agree with the supervisor a date and time for the viva
- to prepare for the viva before the viva, to compare independent reports with the other examiner and agree an agenda for the examination
- to conduct the viva examination
- following examination of all written and, where appropriate, oral evidence, to decide whether the candidate has met the standards for the award
- to decide upon an appropriate recommendation to the dean of postgraduate studies (the full list of recommendations allowed under University regulations is set out later in this document)
- to write a final report with other examiner(s) on the candidate’s performance and submit it on the approved form to the graduate school administration.

in all cases where the recommendation is that the thesis be revised before award or re-submission for the original or a lesser degree, to agree with the other examiner(s) a full list of the changes to be made and/or work to be undertaken. This should be given to the candidate and supervisor as soon as possible after the viva and a copy attached to the final report.
- in the case of external examiners, to comment upon any aspects of a candidate's experience which they have judged to be particularly good or which have raised problems. This should be forwarded to the graduate school administration for forwarding to the relevant dean of postgraduate studies.
5. Good Practice

The purpose of this section is to try to outline good practice in the examination of research degrees by thesis. There is no intention to be prescriptive, just to give a view of the processes involved. These processes are divided into pre-examination, examining written work, the preliminary report, oral examinations, and post-examination.

5.1 Pre-examination

Before reading the work submitted, examiners should consider the criteria against which to evaluate theses. Such criteria may relate to individual chapters, the whole thesis and the award.

5.1.1 Criteria relating to chapters of the work

Criteria relating to specific chapters of the work will vary considerably between subjects and, within subjects, between topics. But they may include, for example:

- **The context**
  - that the research question(s) have been placed in their academic and, where appropriate, industrial or commercial contexts
  - that, in the case of a thesis undertaken as part of a team project, the relationship of the research to the overall project is set out along with the contribution of the candidate relative to that of other team members

- **The literature**
  - that the relevant literature or an appropriately justified section of it has been covered
  - that the literature is reviewed in ways which are critical and analytical and not just descriptive
  - that the thesis demonstrates clear mastery of the literature
  - that explicit links are made between the literature and the topic of the thesis
  - that there are explicit links between the literature and the design of the study
  - that there is a summary of the literature in so far as it relates to the thesis topic

- **Methodology/methods**
  - that there is an awareness of the range of methodologies/methods which have been or might be used to tackle the topic
  - that there is adequate justification of the methodology/ies/methods adopted for the research
  - that the methodology/methods are related to the design of the research
  - that practical problems and issues are identified and discussed
  - where applicable, that ethical considerations are outlined and discussed
  - where applicable, that matters of reliability and validity are identified and discussed

- **Design of the study**
  - that the design of the study is appropriate to the topic
  - that there is awareness of the limitations of the design adopted

- **Substantive research**
  - that the research design has been properly implemented
  - that the relevant sources of evidence have been explored

- **Analysis**
  - that appropriate theoretical and, where applicable, empirical techniques are used to analyse evidence
  - that the level and form of analysis is appropriate to the evidence

- **Outcomes/Results**
  - that the outcomes/results identified relate to the topic
  - that the outcomes/results are justified on the basis of the analysis of the evidence
  - that the outcomes/results are presented clearly
  - where applicable, that patterns and trends in the outcomes/results are accurately identified and summarized

- **Discussion**
  - that the main points emerging from the outcomes/results have been picked up for discussion
  - that there is an awareness of the limitations of the outcomes/results

- **Conclusions**
  - that the conclusions relate to the initial focus of the study
  - that the conclusions drawn are justified by the study
  - that the implications of the conclusions for the field of knowledge have been identified

5.1.2 Criteria relating to the thesis as a whole

For all research degrees, the University requires that work presented in examination should be:

- **Authentic**
  The thesis should be the candidate's own work and not plagiarized from the work of others, published or unpublished. All sources used should be appropriately acknowledged using a recognized form of referencing

- **Scholarly**
  The thesis should conform to the normal canons of scholarship, displaying critical discrimination and a sense of proportion in evaluating evidence and the opinion of others. Sources should be cited accurately, consistently, and correctly in the text and in the bibliography.

- **Professional**
  The thesis should demonstrate that the candidate has acquired or extended a repertoire of research skills appropriate to a professional researcher in his/her field and has a clear understanding of the role of such a researcher.

- **Well-structured, written, and presented**
  The thesis should be clearly structured and orderly in arrangement, and well-written and presented. Similarly, any composition, exhibition, artefact(s) or other products of practice arising from the research should be arranged and presented in an orderly and coherent way.

5.1.3 Specific criteria relating to the award:

- **MPhil**
  In addition to the above, for the MPhil the University requires that the thesis should demonstrate an advanced knowledge of the subject including a satisfactory knowledge of the literature. It does not require that it should be original or worthy of publication

- **DDS/MD/PhD**
  The criteria here are that the thesis
  - should show evidence that the subject has been studied with adequate industry and application
  - demonstrates an ability to conduct original investigations and to test the ideas of the candidate and those of others
  - shows that the candidate understands the relationship of the theme of his or her thesis to the wider field of knowledge
  - exhibits substantial evidence of original scholarship
  - contains material worthy of publication
5.2 Examination of Written Work

While it is good practice to have clear criteria in mind prior to reading the thesis, it is recognized that different external examiners will have their own methods. What follows below are simply suggestions which may be of interest to those new to examining (experienced examiners may wish to skip to this section).

In their Handbook for Examiners, Brown, Partington and Gordon (1993) suggest that examiners should:

♦ Start by gaining an overall impression of the substance of the thesis or dissertation

Examiners can start by reading the full title, the abstract, and the introduction and then turn to the final chapter(s) to see what conclusions were reached. This should enable them to gain an overall impression of what the thesis is about and what has come out of it.

♦ Reflect and re-formulate criteria relating to sections of the thesis

Examiners may then reflect and consider how the criteria relating to the sections of the thesis (5.1.1 above) might be applied to the topic in question, e.g. the literature the candidate might be expected to have read, which methods would be appropriate, etc. etc. By the end of this examiners should have effectively translated the criteria into a set of clearly-defined questions to be asked of the specific piece of work before them. In addition, their reflection may have led to new questions about the research.

♦ Read and note

Examiners can then carefully read each chapter of the thesis or dissertation with the relevant questions in mind. They can note where questions have been answered satisfactorily, where clarification is needed, and where answers are not satisfactory. As, in the course of reading, additional questions occur, these may be noted and views recorded on how well the candidate has answered them in the present chapter or in subsequent ones.

♦ Reflect and summarize

Examiners should now have a clear idea of how far each section of the thesis meets the relevant criteria. These may be summarized to identify the strengths and weaknesses of the thesis and to highlight issues where clarification is required.

♦ Consider whether the thesis meets the general criteria

In the process of reading the thesis section by section, examiners will have begun to formulate an impression of how it meets the more general criteria concerning authenticity, scholarship, and structure, presentation and citation (5.1.2 above). They may now consider how far the work meets these criteria and note where the work does fulfill them, where there is doubt, and where they are not met. This may involve re-reading all or part of the thesis and would normally include checking a sample of citations.

♦ Consider whether the criteria for the award have been met

The last area for consideration is whether the thesis meets the award specific criteria. It can be helpful here for examiners to refresh their memory of the University’s regulations, in particular in the case of the PhD to consider the definition of originality. Again examiners should note in what respects the thesis meets the criteria, where this is unclear, and where it does not meet them.

If examiners follow the above, they should have notes on the extent to which the criteria are met for sections of the thesis, the latter as a whole, and in relation to the award. These notes should form a basis for writing a preliminary report.

5.3 The Preliminary Report

Examiners should then independently write a preliminary report which will indicate their provisional assessment of the thesis and of the issues to be explored in the viva. The University recognizes that these reports will vary considerably depending upon the discipline and the subject matter of the thesis. But it would normally expect that, if the criteria have clearly been fully met, the report will normally be very brief. But, on the other hand, if examiners have serious doubts or concerns about whether criteria have been met, a fuller account would be expected.

A copy of the preliminary report should be sent to the graduate school administration in advance of the oral examination for forwarding to the relevant dean of postgraduate studies. The preliminary report should not be shown to the candidate.

5.4 Oral Examination

The purpose of the viva is to gather further evidence from the candidate about their suitability for the award, in particular:

♦ to ask the candidate to clarify issues relating to meeting criteria relating to specific parts of the thesis, to the thesis as a whole, and to the award

♦ to ascertain that the thesis is the candidate’s own work, that he or she has developed research skills at this level, and that he or she understands the relationship of the thesis to the wider field of knowledge

♦ in cases where the thesis and/or the candidate for the award clearly does not meet the criteria, to find out the reasons. These may include the abilities of the candidate or other factors affecting the research, e.g. deficiencies in research training, the quality of supervision, the availability of resources, disruptions to the research process, or personal circumstances

It is normally the supervisor who arranges the date, time and place of the viva. The supervisor should normally be available for consultation if necessary prior to and after the viva although they are not normally present (except in cases where the student has requested their presence but they will make no contribution to the examination).

Examiners should have a meeting, normally a couple of hours before the viva, to exchange and discuss preliminary reports. Examiners should then, bearing in mind each other’s comments upon the written work, jointly determine:

♦ the key issues to be raised with the candidate

These will be those identified in the initial reports where clarification is required or where criteria have not been met.

♦ the order within which they are to be raised

In order to encourage candidates to talk, it can be helpful to raise relatively uncontroversial/factual issues at the start and then proceed to ones which are likely to be more difficult/conceptual when he or she is in the swing of things.

♦ who will ‘lead’ on each issue

Examiners usually decide upon a division of labour based upon their expertise in the topic, with one leading on each issue and the other asking supplementary questions.

Normally, the external examiner chairs the proceedings and has overall responsibility for conducting the viva. In cases where there is more than one external, it should be agreed who will undertake this role.

Good practice in conducting a viva is:

♦ to ensure that the room is appropriately laid-out

The viva is a formal occasion, and the room should be appropriately laid out.

♦ to introduce the examiners to the candidate

It is courteous to the candidate for the chair of the examiners to introduce him- or herself and the other examiner(s) to the candidate.

♦ to explain the purpose of the viva to the candidate

It can be useful to explain to candidates that the purpose of the viva is to provide them with the opportunity to defend their
thesis in high-level debate with experts drawn from the relevant research community

♦ to explain the process of the viva to the candidate

As many candidates will not have previously undertaken a viva, it has been pointed out (see UCoSDA/British Psychological Society, 1995) that it can be helpful to explain the process to them. This involves the examiners asking questions about their work and supplementary questions based upon their answers.

The chair should make it clear that the examiners have a duty to thoroughly explore both the work presented and the candidate’s knowledge and understanding of both it and the wider field and that persistent questioning is a normal and necessary part of the process.

If he or she wishes, the chair should also say that no information about recommendations will be given until the examiners have conferred after the end of the viva but make it clear that this again is part of the process and that no inferences should be drawn.

The candidate should also be told that he or she may, if they wish, consult with their copy of the thesis throughout the viva.

♦ to start by commending the candidate

Candidates can be extremely nervous, and it is important to try and settle them down at the start of the viva by saying something commendatory but non-committal, e.g. ‘We found your thesis very interesting’, ‘we particularly enjoyed...’.

♦ to question the candidate

Examiners should then start the questions. Normally, the external examiner begins the questions, and he or she should choose ones to start with which candidates should be able to answer without undue difficulty, e.g. why did you decide to do this topic?, what aspect of the work have you most enjoyed? Further questions should then be asked covering the key issues and in the order previously identified. In questioning the candidate, examiners should:

- ask questions in a constructive and positive way

Examiners should try to ask questions in ways that are constructive and positive rather than destructive and negative, e.g. ‘why did you try to solve the problem using method X rather than method Y?’ rather than ‘Didn’t you realise that you could have avoided these difficulties with method Y?’

- use an appropriate range of questioning techniques

Questions may, as Murray (1998) has noted, be general (‘How did you come to study this topic?’), open (‘tell me about your methodology?’) or closed (‘why did you think that the confidence limits were unimportant in this case?’).

General or open ones are useful in encouraging the candidate to reflect upon their work, while closed ones lead to specific answers. Examiners should try to tailor the type of question to the type of answer required and, if possible, aim for a mix of general and open questions (which are harder to answer but can reveal much more about the candidate) and closed ones (which may reveal less but are easier for the candidate to answer).

- recognize that candidates may need time to answer

Particularly when asked general or open questions, candidates may need some time to gather their thoughts together and produce a coherent answer. Examiners need to recognize this and encourage candidates to reflect, e.g. by telling them to ‘take your time’

- praise a good answer

When candidates give a particularly incisive or interesting answer, it can be helpful to their morale to praise them

- give candidates a chance to recover from a poor answer

When candidates give a poor answer, this may be through misunderstanding or nerves. Rephrasing a question and asking it again gives the able candidate the opportunity to recover the position or may confirm the inability to respond of a weaker one.

♦ to conclude the viva

After you and your co-examiner(s) are satisfied that you have gathered the relevant evidence, you should indicate this to the candidate, thank them for answering your questions, ask whether there are any concluding comments which they wish to make, explain again that the examiners will now consult about the outcome, and tell them how the recommendation will be communicated to them. While this may be done informally after the viva, candidates should be informed that formal notification of the result will be given by the Registrar’s Office.

Poor practice in conducting the viva (see Partington, Brown and Gordon (1993: p 78) would be for an examiner to act throughout as:

♦ an inquisitor

This examiner behaves like a TV interviewer quizzing a politician during an election campaign, rapidly shooting out hostile questions, interrupting the answers, and generally trying to score points. Such an approach may intimidate the candidate so that he or she is unable to respond or anger them to the extent that the viva becomes an adversarial confrontation.

♦ a proof reader

This examiner takes candidates line by line through their theses asking questions about errors of spelling, punctuation and grammar. If these are exceptionally poor, instead of proof reading in the viva, examiners can make it a requirement that the thesis is re-typed or hand the candidate a list of corrections after the viva.

♦ a committee person

The committee person takes the candidate through the thesis page by page questioning each matter as it arises rather than synthesising points into key issues relating to the trigger for the study, the methodology, the design, etc.

♦ a hobby horse rider

This examiner has strong feelings or prejudices about one area of the thesis and keeps returning to questions on this while neglecting other aspects of the research.

♦ a proof reader

The kite-flyer has identified a – usually fairly tenuous – link between the thesis and another subject and persists in exploring this to the detriment of the examination of the topic as defined by the candidate, i.e. effectively examines a thesis which the student did not write.

♦ a reminiscer

This examiner continually regales the candidate with stories of their own research career to the detriment of the examination of the candidate’s work.

5.5 Post-examination

After reading the thesis and, if appropriate, conducting the viva, examiners have to decide upon a recommendation, write a report on the examination, and decide what information should be given to candidates required to amend or re-submit theses or dissertations. External examiners are also invited to make comments on any aspect of candidate’s experiences which they have judged to be particularly good or which have raised problems.

5.5.1 Deciding upon a Recommendation

Following the first submission and examination of a candidate, the examiners may make the following recommendations:

(a)(i) That the candidate be admitted immediately to the degree of Doctor of Philosophy.

(a)(ii) That the candidate be admitted to the degree of Doctor of Philosophy subject to minor corrections of the text made to the satisfaction of the academic supervisor, normally within a period of one month of receiving formal notification of the corrections to be made.
(a)(iii) That the candidate be admitted to the degree of Doctor of Philosophy subject to minor revisions being made to the satisfaction of the internal examiner, normally within a period of six months of receiving formal notification of the revisions to be made.

(b)(i) That the candidate be permitted to revise and re-submit the thesis within twelve months and be re-examined orally.

(b)(ii) That the candidate be permitted to revise and re-submit the thesis within twelve months, without a further oral examination.

(c) That the candidate’s thesis be deemed to be of a satisfactory standard, but that the candidate be adjudged to have failed to satisfy the examiners in the oral examination and that the candidate therefore be required to submit within six months either for a second oral examination or for a written examination, as the examiners shall determine.

(d)(i) That the candidate has reached the standard required for the appropriate Master’s Degree and should immediately be awarded that degree.

(d)(ii) That the candidate has reached the standard required for the appropriate Master’s Degree and should be awarded that degree instead subject to minor corrections of the text made to the satisfaction of the academic supervisor, normally within a period of one month of receiving formal notification of the corrections to be made.

(d)(iii) That the candidate has reached the standard required for the appropriate Master’s Degree and should be awarded that degree instead subject to minor revisions being made to the satisfaction of the internal examiner, normally within a period of six months of receiving formal notification of the revisions to be made.

(e) That the candidate be permitted to revise and re-submit the thesis for the appropriate Master’s Degree within twelve months and, if the examiners so require, be re-examined orally.

(f) That no degree be awarded and that the candidate be deemed to have failed.

Recommendations for award (a) above

In cases where examiners are satisfied that all of the criteria for the award are fully met, they should recommend the award of the degree immediately or subject to making minor textual corrections subject to the satisfaction of the supervisor or minor revisions to the satisfaction of the internal examiner.

Other recommendations (b) to (f) above)

In cases in which examiners are not satisfied that all of the criteria are fully met and are unable to recommend award, then there is a range of other recommendations which can be made. In deciding which of these to make in a given case, examiners should take into account:

- the potential to meet the standards for an award
- A recommendation to revise a thesis for resubmission and re-examination should only be made if, in the judgement of the examiners, it has the potential to meet the standards for the original award submitted for or for a another award. If it does not, then it should be failed.
- the amount of work entailed in revising the thesis
- It is possible to recommend that the thesis should be revised and resubmitted within either six or twelve months, and examiners have to make a judgement about the amount of work entailed. If this is a re-writing of sections of the thesis, then normally six months is appropriate; if it is a complete re-write, then twelve months would be appropriate. If further research is required, this should normally be secondary, e.g. discriminating data or recalculating statistics, and not primary, e.g. gathering new data.
- external factors relating to the research

While, of course, external factors relating to the research must not generally be regarded as extenuating in the context of recommending award, examiners may wish to take them into account when considering the time within which a candidate should have the opportunity to revise and re-submit their thesis, subject to the maximum of twelve months.

Such factors may include:

- the quality of supervision received by the candidate, e.g. problems between students and supervisors, disrupted supervision
- facilities available for research, e.g. inadequate resourcing of equipment, unexpected non-availability of equipment, problems with technical support, inadequate library facilities research procedures, e.g. access to participants/clients, patients who have withdrawn unexpectedly, delays in gaining ethical approval for experiments
- the personal circumstances of the candidate

While personal circumstances must not generally be regarded as extenuating in the context of recommending award, examiners may wish to take them into account when considering specifying the time within which a candidate should have the opportunity to revise and re-submit their thesis, subject to the maximum of twelve months.

Such personal circumstances may include illness, pregnancy, personal stress, linguistic or cultural difficulties in undertaking and writing up the research. There should normally be documentary evidence covering such circumstances.

Additionally, in the rare cases of candidates whose thesis is satisfactory but who fail the viva examination, personal circumstances may be taken into account in considering whether to hold a second viva or to hold a written examination.

So if, for example, there are medical reasons why the candidate will viva poorly or in cases where candidates are returning overseas and will find it difficult to return for a second viva, examiners may consider substituting a written test.

5.5.2 Writing the Final Report

The final report should be written, ideally, immediately following the viva or as soon as possible thereafter.

In the vast majority of cases, examiners independently arrive at the same verdict and concur in the recommendation. They should then jointly complete the supplied final report form. This involves completing a checklist of how far the criteria for the award have been met by the candidate and stating the recommendation to Senate. Final reports should be sent to the graduate school administration which will, subject to approval by the relevant postgraduate dean, forward them to the candidate and the candidate’s supervisor.

In a few cases, examiners may be unable to agree upon a recommendation. In this case, they should complete the form indicating their recommendations and the grounds for disagreement, and forward it to the graduate school administration. (This report will not be made available to the candidate but will, if the candidate should subsequently appeal, form part of the formal record of appeal). The University will then appoint a new external examiner who will re-examine the thesis, if necessary conduct a further viva, and make a recommendation which is final. The additional examiner shall be told that the previous examiners had failed to reach agreement but will not have sight of the report. On the occasion of the second oral examination the candidate’s supervisory team (and where appropriate the Internal Examiner) shall be available to be consulted by the additional external examiner. The dean of postgraduate studies shall appoint a member of University staff as an independent observer, who will report on the conduct of the viva. The main supervisor shall co-ordinate the arrangements for the oral examination. After the conclusion of the oral examination, the additional examiner shall make a recommendation which shall be final. He/she shall submit a final report to the relevant
Graduate School Office which will, subject to the approval of the relevant dean of postgraduate studies, forward it to the candidate and the candidate's supervisory team in the normal way.

5.5.3 Giving Information to Candidates Required to Revise or Resubmit Work
In cases where the recommendation is that changes need to be made to the thesis before resubmission, it is the responsibility of the examiners to provide full details of all changes and revisions required. The list of revisions required should be given to the candidate and the candidate's supervisor as soon as possible after the viva and a copy attached to the final report which is forwarded to the graduate school administration. The latter then communicates these in writing to the research supervisor and to the candidate. It should be noted that the presumption is that if the candidate makes these changes and revisions to the satisfaction of a designated examiner (normally the internal examiner for students and an external for staff) or, if specified, all examiners, this will lead to a recommendation for award.

It is therefore important that, before they part after the viva, the examiners agree exactly what the student is required to do before resubmission. Where the recommendation is that the degree be awarded subject to minor textual changes, this will simply consist of a list of the corrections required, but where the thesis is referred for resubmission within six or twelve months, a more substantial list of changes/work to be done must be provided. It is vital that this is comprehensive – a student who has made all of the changes required by the examiners but who is then denied the award because of further deficiencies would have good grounds for appeal.

5.5.4 Commenting upon the Candidate's Experience
External examiners are invited to make any relevant comments upon aspects of a candidate's experience which they feel have been particularly good or which have raised problems. These should be addressed in a separate letter to the graduate school administration which will forward a copy to the relevant dean of postgraduate studies for consideration.

6. Conclusions
The examiners are key figures in ensuring that the standards of research degrees meet the University's criteria and are at least comparable with those in other UK Universities.

The University ensures that examiners of research degrees are of high standing in their discipline, and that they bring a knowledge and understanding of discipline-specific standards to their duties.

In performing those duties, the University expects that examiners will be rigorous and fair and that they will follow good practice, as set out above or in other ways.

By undertaking their duties in this way, examiners not only maintain standards at Newcastle but, of course, also act as effective gatekeepers for the research community of which they are a part by ensuring that candidates meet the academic criteria for membership.

Additional Information for Examiners of Theses Submitted in Partial Fulfillment of the Requirements of the Doctor of Philosophy (Integrated)

Integrated PhD programmes consist of two components:

1. Taught Component (200 credits):
   This consists of taught modules including a choice of specialist modules and research methods modules. An individual programme of study is agreed between the student and the Degree Programme Director. All assignments are subject to moderation by an external examiner for the programme.

2. Research Component:
   Every student submits a thesis of approximately 50,000 words. A formal written research proposal is approved by an independent school panel and supervisor/s are allocated. There is a formal progression meeting to approve progression from the taught to the research element. An independent school panel makes a recommendation on progress on the research element of the programme annually.

According to the University's regulations: “Candidates for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy (Integrated) are required to demonstrate:

(a) a systematic acquisition and understanding of a substantial body of knowledge which is at the forefront of an academic discipline or area of professional practice;

(b) the creation and interpretation of new knowledge, through original research or other advanced scholarship, of a quality to satisfy peer review, extend the forefront of the discipline and merit publication;

(c) the general ability to conceptualize, design, implement and adjust a project for the generation of new knowledge, applications, or understanding at the forefront of the discipline. Where appropriate, also to demonstrate the ability to formulate and test hypotheses and to generate alternative explanations for the data available;

(d) a detailed understanding of applicable techniques for research and advanced academic enquiry;

(e) a range of advanced professional and key skills related to their likely employment context including the ability to communicate their ideas and conclusions clearly and effectively to specialist and non-specialist audiences.

A doctoral thesis should exhibit substantial evidence of original scholarship and contain material worthy of publication.”

An acceptable Integrated PhD thesis will therefore meet the same criteria as those laid down by the University for a traditional PhD thesis, namely original scholarship, methodological rigour and the inclusion of material of publishable quality. The length of the thesis will be around two-thirds of the length of a traditional PhD thesis, approximately 50,000 words. It is therefore likely that the Integrated PhD thesis will be more tightly focused, the literature review less broad in scope and the quantity but not the quality of data collected less than might normally be expected for a traditional PhD. Nevertheless, the rigour of the methodology, its validity and reliability, and the quality of analysis will match that of a traditional PhD thesis.

Students are encouraged to use their assignments from the taught element of the programme to help formulate their ideas, construct the methodology and explore the literature for their thesis. For many students, therefore, some of the work that might normally be found in a traditional PhD thesis will already have contributed to the assessed work for the taught component. These assignments are subject to external examination. They can however, be made available to both internal and external examiners of Integrated PhD theses prior to the viva voce examination should the examiners so require.

References
Guidelines for Assessment of the PhD in Psychology and Related Disciplines (Sheffield: ESRC and UCoSDA, 1995)
R.Murray, The Viva (University of Strathclyde: Centre for Academic Practice, 1998)
The University requires all students to maintain high standards of academic conduct and, in particular, to avoid conduct amounting to cheating in examinations, the fabrication of research results or plagiarism.

Cheating in examinations includes: copying from or conferring with other candidates; the possession or use of unauthorized material or equipment; and the impersonation of an examination candidate. Candidates who knowingly permit themselves to be impersonated, or their work to be copied, will be regarded as cheating. Any student suspected of having cheated in examinations will be dealt with under the University's Assessment Irregularities Procedure and may also be subject to disciplinary action as determined by the Academic Registrar in accordance with the University's Disciplinary Procedures approved by Council.

The fabrication of research results includes: claims, which cannot reasonably be justified, to have obtained specific or general results; false claims in relation to experiments, interviews, procedures or any other research activity; and the omission of statements in relation to data, results, experiments, interviews or procedures, where such omission cannot reasonably be justified. Any student who is suspected of having fabricated research results in relation to submitted and assessed work which contributes to an examination or degree result, will be dealt with under the University's Assessment Irregularities Procedure and may also be subject to disciplinary action as determined by the Academic Registrar in accordance with the University's Disciplinary Procedures.

Plagiarism is the unacknowledged use of another person’s ideas, words or work. At one extreme, plagiarism is simply a form of cheating, such as where the whole or a significant part of work submitted towards an examination or degree is the unacknowledged work of another, copied slavishly from a book or research paper. At the other extreme, plagiarism may occur accidentally, through poor standards of scholarship, or may concern insignificant parts of submitted work. Plagiarism may involve the use of material downloaded from electronic sources such as the Internet.

Students are sometimes unclear as to what use may be made of the work of others in the field without raising concerns about plagiarism. Any student who is in doubt on this matter should consult his or her tutor or supervisor. In most cases, the adoption of appropriate standards of scholarship will avoid any such concerns. The following general guidelines may assist:

1. Passages copied verbatim from the work of another must be enclosed in quotation marks. A full reference to the original source must be provided. The substitution of a few words in an otherwise verbatim passage will not obviate the need to use quotation marks and to provide a full reference.
2. Students must always give due acknowledgement to the sources of ideas or data which are not their own and are not truly in the public domain (for example, because they are novel or controversial) or are not widely held or widely recognized.
3. Ideas and data which are the student's own or are truly in the public domain may be included without attribution, but should be expressed in the student's own words.
4. Students must take care to distinguish between their own ideas or work and those of others. Any ambiguity in such a distinction could give rise to a suspicion of plagiarism.
5. Where the student's work is the result of collaborative research, the student must take care to acknowledge the source of data, analysis or procedures which are not their own. Students who are suspected of having made the unacknowledged use of another person’s ideas, words or work in submitted and assessed work which contributes to an examination or degree result, will be dealt with under the University's Assessment Irregularities Procedure and may also be subject to disciplinary action as determined by the Academic Registrar in accordance with the University's Disciplinary Procedures.

Guidelines on External Funding – URO Input

The University Research Office (URO) can assist research supervisors in the following areas:

- Negotiation of research studentship funded projects with external organizations.
- Advice on student intellectual property issues including assignment of Intellectual Property to the University.
- Advice on other contractual obligations relating to confidentiality, publication, reporting.

Full information on these and other information relating to studentships can be found on the Research and Innovation Services website at www.ncl.ac.uk/ris/central/pages/resources/wallen/research_studentships.htm

The URO website also has details of who to contact in the University Research Office.

Advice for Collaborative Studentships

ESRC document 'On the Case' (E Bell and C Read, 1988)

The full, very comprehensive document is available from the relevant graduate school or the Student Progress Section. The contents of the full document are listed below:

SECTION 1
- Introduction: where it all started
- The growth of collaborative research
- The ESRC perspective

SECTION 2
- The beginning: principal issues in setting up a collaborative studentship
- Understanding non-academic organization perspectives
- Developing and setting the standards of the research project
- Intellectual property rights arising from the research
- Public dissemination of research results/confidentiality issues
- Recruiting the student

SECTION 3
What to do when your research nears completion ...

Submission of Thesis
Approximately three months prior to the completion of your thesis you need to submit a form for the approval of your thesis title to your supervisor. (The form can be collected from your graduate school). Your supervisor will also use this form to begin the process of appointment of your examiners. You are advised to ensure that debts are cleared in advance of submitting this form.

When you submit two soft bound copies of your thesis to the graduate school, you will be required to complete a Research Degree Examination Entry form. This form has a declaration from you regarding your work and will be used to check that all your financial obligations to the University have been met.

Once your soft bound theses have been received by the graduate school they will be forwarded to your examiners with copies of regulations and forms for their reports. Your supervisor will arrange the viva date, in consultation with the examiners and yourself.

The graduate school will inform you of the result of your examination, and give details of any revisions that may be required along with the deadline for your resubmission.

Once you have been informed in writing by the graduate school that the examiners have agreed that you have met all the conditions for your award, you will be asked to submit two hard bound copies of your completed thesis. You will need to also complete the British Library forms at this time. When these are submitted to the graduate school your passlist will be produced and you will be asked to complete the forms for your congregation where your award will be conferred.

Conferment of Degrees
When the passlist is produced you will become eligible to graduate with your research degree. Congregations are held in May, July and December each year for the conferment of a higher degree. When passlists have been produced, students will be invited to apply to graduate at the next available ceremony. Students need to apply to be included in a particular ceremony. For further information on any aspect of Congregations, please refer to the Congregations website: www.ncl.ac.uk/congregations or contact the Congregations Administrator, telephone: 0191 222 6225.

Code of Good Practice in Research
The University expects all its researchers and students to adhere to the highest standards of integrity in research. This statement addresses the issues involved in the proper conduct of research and provides guidance on the standards expected. It applies to staff, honorary staff, students and visiting workers.

Within this overarching framework there may be specific discipline requirements in areas such as ethics, clinical governance, data protection, legal requirements, home office and other government requirements, in addition to health and safety and other good laboratory practice requirements. Some disciplines may also be subject to specific good practice requirements of external funding agencies or professional bodies.

1 Integrity and honesty
1.1 Researchers should be honest in respect of their own actions in research and their responses to the actions of other researchers. This applies to the whole range of research work, including experimental design, generating and analysing data, acting as a reviewer or referee on grant applications or research papers etc, applying for funding, publishing results, and acknowledging the direct and indirect contributions of colleagues, collaborators and others.

1.2 Plagiarism, deception or the fabrication or falsification of results, are regarded by the University as serious disciplinary offences.

2 Research misconduct
2.1 The University takes seriously any allegation of research misconduct and has a written procedure for investigating and resolving such allegations.

2.2 Researchers are encouraged to report cases of research misconduct and to do so in a responsible and appropriate manner. (Please refer to the University's Policy on Research Misconduct.)

3 Leadership and co-operation in research groups
3.1 The Vice-Chancellor, Pro-Vice-Chancellors, Provosts, deans of research, heads of schools, directors of research institutes and centres, professorial and all other senior staff are responsible for creating a climate which allows research to be conducted in accordance with good research practice.

3.2 Leaders of research groups have responsibility to ensure that a climate of mutual co-operation is created in which all members of the research team are encouraged to develop their skills and in which both the open exchange of ideas and supportive criticism is fostered.

3.3 Research group leaders must also ensure that appropriate direction of research and supervision of researchers and research students is provided.

4 Openness
4.1 While recognizing the need for researchers to protect their own and the University's research interests in the process of planning their research, obtaining and publishing the results, and seeking to develop the outcome of their research into application (where relevant), the University encourages researchers to be as open as possible in discussing their work with other researchers, and with the public.

4.2 Once results have been published the University expects researchers to make available relevant data and materials to other researchers on request, provided that this is consistent with any ethics approval and consents which cover the data and materials and any intellectual property rights in them.

5 Guidance from professional bodies
5.1 Researchers are expected to observe the standards of research practice set out in guidelines published by funding bodies, scientific and learned societies and other relevant professional bodies.

5.2 All researchers should be aware of, and comply with, the legal requirements which regulate their work.
6 Ethical approval

6.1 Researchers whose work involves human participants or human biological samples are expected to comply with local or multi centre research ethics committee requirements and to understand any other requirements of regulatory bodies relating to their work. For further information see the staff handbook.

7 Documenting results and storing primary data

7.1 There should be clarity at the outset of the research programme as to the ownership of, where relevant:
- data and samples used or created in the course of the research; and
- the results of the research.

7.2 Researchers should keep clear and accurate records of the procedure followed and the approvals granted during the research process, including records of the interim results obtained as well as the final research outcomes. This is necessary not only as a means of demonstrating proper research practice, but also in case questions are subsequently asked about either the conduct of the research or the results obtained.

7.3 Data generated during the course of research should be kept securely in paper or electronic format as appropriate and retained for a minimum of 10 years (or longer where there is a legal requirement governing retention).

7.4 Back up records should always be kept for data stored on a computer.

7.5 Data collected and stored must comply with any legal requirements such as the Data Protection Act.

8 Publishing results

8.1 Results should be published in an appropriate form, usually as papers in refereed journals or other publicly accessible form.

8.2 Researchers should have regard to the commercialization potential of their work and take appropriate steps to advise the University of any inventions and, where appropriate, take steps to protect any intellectual property prior to publication.

8.3 Whilst the publication of the results of research may need to be delayed for a reasonable period pending protection of intellectual property arising from research, such periods of delay in publication should be kept to a minimum.

8.4 Anyone listed as an author on a paper should accept responsibility for ensuring that he/she is familiar with the contents of the paper and can identify his/her contribution to it. The practice of honorary authorship is unacceptable.

8.5 Whilst the University encourages the communication of research to the wider public, any disclosure to the popular media should endeavour to place the research in its appropriate context and care should be taken not to exaggerate the impact of any findings.

9 Use of results

9.1 Where appropriate, researchers are expected to maximize the prospects of research being taken into practice through the commercial route by protecting intellectual property (IPR).

9.2 Where a commercial route is not appropriate then it is expected that researchers will take appropriate steps to ensure that research findings are transferred to relevant user communities.

10 Acknowledging the role of collaborators and other participants

10.1 The contributions of formal collaborators and all others who directly assist or indirectly support the work should be properly acknowledged.

11 Managing Research Projects

11.1 Researchers have a responsibility to ensure that they, and all those involved in the project, are fully aware of the terms and conditions of grants and contracts and the implication of these in relation to their research projects.

11.2 Lead researchers have a responsibility to ensure that all staff and students working on projects are made aware of, and adhere to, this Code of Good Practice.

12 Conflict of interest

12.1 Researchers should declare and manage any real or potential conflicts of interest, both financial and professional. These might include:
- where the researchers have an existing or potential interest in the outcome of the research;
- where there is a private or private practice benefit significantly dependent upon the outcome of the research;
- where the researcher's professional or personal gain arising from the research may be more than might be usual for research.

The University will shortly be publishing a further statement on Conflicts of Interest.

This code of practice is consistent with, and is drawn from codes of good research practice published by the BBSRC, MRC, the Wellcome Trust, and the Guidelines from the Association of Medical Research Charities.

See also: Part Six of this Handbook – the Policy and Procedure for Investigating Allegations of Research Misconduct.
PART SIX

Academic Matters

Policies and Procedures

The University has a range of policies and procedures which exist for the purpose of protecting and supporting the highest standards within the University. Readers are encouraged to be familiar with their existence. The full policies and/or procedures are not included below – only key points are highlighted. Policies and procedures are subject to annual review. You should therefore check the University’s website for the latest and full version.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Content</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Academic Appeals Procedure</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Procedure for Assessment Irregularities</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dignity at Work and Study - Code of Practice for Staff and Students</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equal Opportunities Policy</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Race Equality Policy</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Policy and Procedure on Public Interest Disclosure</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Student Disciplinary Procedures</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Student Complaints Procedure</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Withdrawing from the University</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Policy for Intellectual Property and Research Studentships</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Policy and Procedure for Investigating Allegations of Research Misconduct (for staff)</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copyright Licence Agreement</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Challenges to the academic judgement of the examiners
(i) Bias or prejudice on the part of an examiner or
(ii) Inadequate assessment by an examiner or examiners.
(iii) Procedural irregularity on the part of the examiners.

Irregularities, an irregularity involves the use of improper means by a candidate in the assessment process. This includes, but is not limited to:

• Copying from or conferring with other candidates or using unauthorised material or equipment in an examination room;
• Impersonating or allowing another to impersonate a candidate;
• Introducing examination scripts into the examination process otherwise than in the course of an examination;
• Permitting another student to copy work;
• The falsification (by inclusion or suppression) of research results;
• Plagiarism. This is defined as the unacknowledged use of another person's ideas, words or work either verbatim or in substance without specific acknowledgement. For the avoidance of doubt, plagiarism may occur in an examination script as well as in assessed coursework, projects, reports and like work and may involve the use of material downloaded from electronic sources such as the internet. Further, the inclusion of a source in a bibliography is not of itself a sufficient attribution of another's work.

The full Academic Appeals Procedure is available at www.ncl.ac.uk/spo/

Note that for research students, responsibility for investigation lies with the Dean of Postgraduate Studies.

Dignity at Work and Study - Code of Practice for Staff and Students

1 Policy Statement
The University is committed to a policy of equality of opportunity. We aim to provide a working and learning environment which is free from unfair discrimination and which will give staff and students the opportunity to fulfil their potential. All individuals should be treated with dignity and respect whether at work or study.

The purpose of this Policy is to promote a working and learning environment and culture in which harassment and bullying are known to be unacceptable and where individuals have the confidence to deal with harassment and bullying without fear of victimisation. This policy aims to ensure that if harassment or bullying does occur to staff, students or visitors, adequate procedures are readily available to deal with the problem with support and sensitivity so as to prevent it recurring.

Harassment and bullying can have a detrimental effect on a person’s health, confidence, morale and performance and on the working and learning environment. The University undertakes to ensure a prompt response to all complaints and to treat them with due respect, relevant confidentiality and fairness (see Procedure, Appendix 1). In some instances they may be dealt with informally. In others there may be grounds for disciplinary actions, including dismissal or expulsion from the University.

The University undertakes to:

• Treat incidents of harassment or bullying as serious;
• Publicise the Policy as widely as possible in order to ensure that all staff and students are aware of its existence;
• Include information in staff induction and appropriate staff development sessions (eg awareness training);
• Monitor the number of cases arising and the effectiveness of the Policy.
2 Rights and Responsibilities

The 1991 European Commission code ‘Protection of Dignity of Men and Women at Work’, highlights the need for employers to develop and implement coherent policies to prevent harassment. In addition, various laws place responsibilities on employers to protect employees and these are outlined in Appendix 2.

Everyone has a responsibility to respect the feelings and sensibilities of others and to behave in a way which does not cause offence. In some instances individuals may be genuinely unaware that their behaviour is causing offence, but it is the duty of each individual to be sensitive to the impact their conduct may have on colleagues.

All those in authority, whether managers, supervisors, leaders etc have a responsibility to issue reasonable instructions and expect them to be carried out. The legitimate supervision of staff and students should be distinguished from harassing or bullying behaviour. However, it is important that consideration is given to style of dealing with others - those exercising authority should not behave in a way that would generally be considered unreasonable.

Staff and students should discourage harassment and bullying by making it clear that they find such behaviour unacceptable and by supporting colleagues who experience such treatment. Anyone who sees harassment or bullying happening in their area has a responsibility to take action. It is possible to bring a complaint forward if you witness harassment or bullying.

All complaints of harassment or bullying will be taken seriously by the University and thoroughly investigated. The aim is to provide the support needed to help individuals decide the best course of action, and to resolve the issues raised.

The Procedure, (Appendix 1) provides a framework for dealing with complaints confidentially, fairly and in a consistent manner. It will also help to resolve problems quickly and informally wherever possible, without fear of victimisation or retaliation.

Serious breaches of the Policy may lead to the relevant disciplinary procedures being used.

3 What are harassment and bullying?

Harassment, in general terms, is unwanted conduct affecting the dignity of men and women. It may be related to race, ethnic origin, sex, marital or parental status, sexual orientation, religion, disability, age, political belief, trade union membership, or any personal characteristic of the individual, and may be persistent or an isolated incident. The key is that the actions or comments are viewed as demeaning and unacceptable to the recipient.

The following are some examples of what is unacceptable behaviour in the University:

- Physical Conduct - Unwanted physical contact, including unnecessary touching or brushing against another employee/student’s body, assault, coercing sexual intercourse, physical threats, insulting or abusive behaviour or gestures;
- Verbal Conduct - Unwelcome advances, propositions or remarks, innuendoes, lewd comments or abusive language, which is sex or race based or which refers to a person’s age, disability, sexuality, religion or personal appearance;
- Non-verbal Conduct - Making abusive or offensive gestures, displaying of offensive written or visual material, other unacceptable non-verbal conduct which denigrates a person for whatever reason;
- Bullying - Offensive, abusive, intimidating, malicious or insulting behaviour, including by electronic means, abuse of power or unfair sanctions, which make the recipient feel threatened or vulnerable, which undermines self confidence and which may cause stress.

Bullying and harassment are not necessarily face to face, they may be by written communications, electronic email (so called 'flame-mail') and phone. More subtle forms of bullying and harassment, often not recognised, include persistently ignoring a person, isolating or excluding them.

4 Responsibilities

All Staff and Students

Everyone has a responsibility to comply with this Policy and all staff and students should ensure that their behaviour towards colleagues does not cause offence and could not in any way be considered to be harassment or bullying.

Differences in culture, attitudes and experience, or the misinterpretation of social signals, can mean that what is perceived by the person experiencing the behaviour as harassment and bullying, may be perceived by others as normal. It is important to be sensitive to the feelings and reactions of others and adjust behaviour as necessary.

Unresolved incidents of harassment or bullying need to be progressed and can be raised with any one of the people listed in the Procedure.

Those with responsibility for implementing the Policy should:

- Set a good example by treating all staff and students with dignity and respect;
- Understand the Policy and make every effort to ensure that harassment and bullying do not occur, particularly in work or study areas for which they are responsible;
- Respond sensitively and supportively to any members of staff or students who make an allegation of harassment or bullying; provide clear advice on the procedure to be adopted; maintain confidentiality in accordance with this Policy; monitor the work or study environment to ensure that there are no problems of harassment or bullying, or of victimisation after a complaint has been made;
- Be alert to unacceptable behaviour and take appropriate action: do not wait until complaints are brought to their attention if they are aware of behaviour of other managers or staff or students which might cause offence. If the incident is not serious then calling the individual aside and carrying out some ‘awareness-raising’ may be sufficient to stop the behaviour;
- Ensure that staff and students know how to raise problems, are aware of the Policy and procedures, and of sources of help and advice.

Dignity at Work and Study Advisers

Dignity at Work and Study Advisers are members of staff who have volunteered and have been trained to undertake this role. Any of the Advisers, listed in Appendix 3, will be prepared to discuss incidents or problems with you in complete confidence, however sensitive these may be. An Adviser will listen carefully to the problem and then inform you of possible courses of action. The Adviser may be able to suggest strategies for dealing with the harassment or bullying and will help you reach a decision about what, if anything, you wish to do, or have done, about the harassment.

If you are being accused of harassment or bullying the Adviser will also be able to offer you advice.

Support and advice can also be obtained from the Equal Opportunities Adviser.

Any discussions will be confidential within the confines of the University’s legal obligations. In some cases the first
person you contact may need to consult further in order to find the best way to help you: this will be done in confidence.

Trade Union Representatives

Trade union members who are raising a complaint, or have a complaint made against them, can also talk confidentially to a representative of their trade union for advice and support.

Appendix 1

Procedure for Making and Dealing with Complaints of Harassment and Bullying

1 Introduction

This procedure has been designed to deal with complaints of harassment and bullying which need to be handled in a sensitive manner. The procedure, therefore, seeks to ensure minimal stress for the complainant, timely resolutions of complaints and a degree of flexibility appropriate to individual circumstances.

At all stages of the procedure, the need to maintain confidentiality for both complainant and alleged harasser will be paramount. Information circulation will be minimised to that which is necessary to ensure a fair investigation and hearing.

This procedure is separate from the disciplinary procedures, which may be used following the results of the investigation under this procedure. However, an incident may be so serious, or there may be sufficient evidence, to proceed straight away with the relevant disciplinary procedure.

It is recognised that in bringing a complaint, the complainant must be protected from further harassment or detriment arising from the alleged incident and associated complaint. However, malicious or malicious allegations may in themselves be a form of harassment and can lead to disciplinary action against the complainant.

2 Keeping a record

It is important that anyone who believes that they have suffered from harassment or bullying should keep notes of the details outlined below for each incident. Such notes should be made as soon after the event as possible. The notes should, if possible, include the following:

- date
- time
- place
- name of person harassing/bullying them
- what actually happened
- how they actually felt at the time of harassment/bullying
- name of any witnesses
- action taken and whether reported
- any correspondence relating to the incidents and subsequent complaints

Act promptly: don’t wait until conditions reach an intolerable level or your personal well-being is put in jeopardy.

3 First Stage - Informal

If you think you are being subjected to harassment or bullying in any form, do not feel that it is your fault or that you have to tolerate it.

If possible, make it clear to the harasser that his/her behaviour is unacceptable and must stop. You could do this verbally, or you may find it easier to do it by letter, in which case you are advised to keep a copy.

It is important to keep a record of events which distress you and the effect they have had on you. Make a note of any witnesses to an incident and ask them if they would be prepared to give evidence on your behalf should the complaint proceed to the formal stage.

4 Second Stage - Informal

If you feel unable to confront the person concerned as set out in the First Stage, you should seek help and advice from any one of the following people:

**Staff**

- Provost
- Head of School/Service
- Line Manager
- Human Resources Officer
- Trade Union Representative
- University Chaplain
- Dignity at Work and Study Adviser
- Equal Opportunities Adviser

**Students**

- Head of School
- Personal Tutor/Supervisor or other relevant academic
- Welfare Officer in Student Union
- Student Advice Centre in Student Union
- Student Progress Office
- Counselling Service
- University Chaplain
- Dignity at Work and Study Adviser
- Equal Opportunities Adviser

Where appropriate, and only with your agreement, they will attempt to resolve the matter informally.

This may involve you, with their support, meeting with the harasser to explain why his/her behaviour is causing offence/distress and to ask him/her to change his/her behaviour.

If you do not feel able to meet with the harasser, you can request that the adviser meets with the harasser on your behalf in an attempt to resolve the matter or that the adviser seeks assistance from someone else who may be able to mediate between you and the harasser. In cases where the Head of School/Service or student’s tutor/supervisor is not directly involved, that person should be informed of the action being taken unless you request otherwise.

If the matter remains unresolved through this informal approach, or if the problem continues after an agreed resolution, the matter should be referred to the Third and Formal Stage.

5 Third Stage - Formal

If the harassment/bullying continues or is of a more serious nature that cannot be dealt with by the informal means, you should make a formal complaint by completing an HB1 Form detailing your complaint. At this stage the alleged harasser will be sent a copy of your completed HB1 Form and any letter that you submit with the form.

Please note: Dignity at Work and Study Advisers are trained to advise you if you wish.

For Staff

You will submit an HB1 form to the Director of Human Resources who will consider its degree of seriousness and, where appropriate, in consultation with the Equal
Opportunities Adviser, will ensure that all informal action has been exhausted. The Director of Human Resources will nominate an appropriate investigating officer who will investigate the matter and decide whether or not the case is a disciplinary one to be pursued through the University’s Disciplinary Procedures.

Notes will be kept of any investigation, meetings or discussions and appropriate confidentiality will be observed for both complainant and alleged harasser.

You have the right to be accompanied to these meetings/discussions by a Dignity at Work and Study Adviser, Trade Union Representative or other appropriate member of staff.

Both complainant and alleged harasser will be informed of the outcome of the investigation in writing.

For Students
You will follow the Student Complaints Procedure which is available from the Student Progress Office.

NB If a member of staff is involved, the complaint should be reported to the Head of the Student Progress Office who will in turn notify the Director of Human Resources. The Head of the Student Progress Office and the Director of Human Resources will jointly nominate an appropriate investigating officer.

Notes will be kept of any investigation, meetings or discussions and appropriate confidentiality will be observed for both complainant and alleged harasser.

You have the right to be accompanied to these meetings/discussions by a Dignity at Work and Study Adviser or other appropriate member of staff or student.

Both complainant and alleged harasser will be informed of the outcome of the investigation in writing.

6 Possible Outcomes

- no further action
- confirmation of the alleged harasser’s innocence
- informal resolution eg conciliation
- staff development for the alleged harasser
- disciplinary procedure invoked which may result in oral, written or final written warnings or suspension or dismissal/expulsion from the University
- moving the alleged harasser or the complainant to a different location, if appropriate (it is normal practice to move a proven harasser rather than the complainant – if it is necessary to move the complainant for sound business reasons, this should only be done with the complainant’s agreement, as a forcible move could constitute further detriment/harassment)

7 Appeals

If the complainant or alleged harasser is not satisfied with the way the complaint has been handled or the outcome they may appeal in writing in the following ways:

For staff
Appeal in writing to the Chair of the Equal Opportunities Committee within 10 working days of written notification of the outcome of the formal investigation. Appeals against disciplinary action should be dealt with under the relevant disciplinary procedure.

For students
Students wishing to lodge an appeal about the outcome of a complaint which has been investigated should do so in writing, addressing their appeal to the Academic Registrar. If the Academic Registrar, having investigated the original complaint, considers there to be grounds for the appeal, she may make appropriate arrangements to have the complaint reconsidered. Any further action or outcome will be decided by the Academic Registrar and will be final. There will be no further opportunities for appeal within the University.

8 Where a complaint is made against you

If you have a formal complaint made against you, you will be given a copy of the Dignity at Work and Study Policy and a copy of the HB1 Form completed by the complainant. You will be given the opportunity to state your case and to respond to a written complaint in writing. Any written response will be copied to the complainant. Where disciplinary action is taken you will have rights as specified under the relevant disciplinary procedure.

If it is found that a malicious complaint has been made, this will be addressed through measures such as action under the appropriate disciplinary procedures being taken against the complainant.

If a complaint is made against you, you should consider the following:

- Differences of attitude and culture or misinterpretation of social signals can mean that what is perceived as harassment by one person may not seem so to another. Even though your behaviour may seem harmless to you, it is the other person’s reasonable reaction to your behaviour that is important.
- Think carefully about the complaint and the particular concerns expressed and consider whether the complaint can be justified in any way, and whether it would be advisable and appropriate to change your behaviour.
- The first indication you may have that there is a problem may be when a colleague tells you that they are offended or upset by certain aspects of your behaviour and they will ask you to stop behaving towards them in a particular manner. All staff/students have the right to ask any of their colleagues to stop behaving in a manner which is insulting or offensive to them.
- Alternatively you may first be made aware that there is a problem when approached by one of the designated members of staff attempting to resolve the issue or informing you that a formal complaint has been made.
- If you are accused of harassment or bullying, you may wish to consult a relevant advisor as mentioned in Section 4 of this procedure. Using these support networks will not be interpreted as an indication of guilt or any admission on your part: they are intended to help staff/students to deal with any allegations made against them.
- If a problem is identified, the different stages of the Procedure will allow for that problem to be dealt with either informally or formally depending on the circumstances of each case.
- Whatever stage of the Procedure is used, the aim is to stop any individual from harassing or bullying another and to prevent staff/students from having to endure this type of behaviour.

9 False Complaints

This procedure aims to promote fairness and consistency in dealing with reasonable complaints from members of staff and students. However, the University will not accept complaints which are believed to be false or malicious and, indeed, may decide to take disciplinary action in some circumstances when it can be demonstrated that a complaint is made on a deliberately false or malicious basis.
Equal Opportunities Policy

1. Policy Statement

Newcastle University confirms its commitment to a comprehensive policy of equal opportunities for all employees and all students in which individuals are selected and treated on the basis of their relevant merits and abilities and are given equal opportunities within the University. The aim of the policy is to ensure that no job applicant or employee, prospective student or student, should receive less favourable treatment on any grounds which are not relevant to good employment practice for staff or to academic ability, potential and attainment for students. The University is committed to a programme of action to make the policy fully effective.

It is the University’s policy to treat all people equally irrespective of race, ethnic origin, sex, marital or parental status, sexual orientation, religion or belief, disability, age, political belief or trade union membership and activities.

In order to promote practices which will ensure equality of opportunity, all staff and students should be made aware of the University’s statement of policy and of this code of practice.

Staff and students are encouraged to assist in the removal of any discriminatory practices that may exist in the University by drawing them to the attention of the Chair of the Equal Opportunities Committee via the Director of Human Resources for staff or the Academic Registrar for students.

2. Responsibility for the Policy

All staff, students, visitors and others associated with the University, without exception, have a responsibility to ensure that their actions comply with the requirements of the Policy, namely to treat all people equally irrespective of race, ethnic origin, sex, marital or parental status, sexual orientation, religion or belief, disability, age, political or trade union membership or activities. There are a number of individuals and groups with specific responsibilities:

University Council is responsible for:
- Ensuring that the Equal Opportunities Policy and its procedures are in place.

The Vice-Chancellor has ultimate executive responsibility for:
- The effective development and implementation of Equal Opportunities Policies.

Managers (including Provosts, Heads of Schools, Heads of Service and all other line managers) are responsible for:
- Ensuring that the policy is implemented and maintained within their own Schools/Services
- Ensuring all staff are fully informed about their responsibilities and receive support and training in carrying them out.
- Taking appropriate action against staff or students who discriminate for reasons of race, ethnic origin, sex, marital or parental status, sexual orientation, religion or belief, disability, age, political belief or trade union membership or activities. This may include invoking appropriate University disciplinary or grievance procedures, and initiating procedures for dealing with complaints.
- Ensuring that the equal opportunities policy and its procedures are followed within their areas of responsibility.

The Director of Human Resources and the Academic Registrar have responsibility for:
- The implementation and monitoring of the policy as it pertains to staff and students respectively.
- Reporting to the Equal Opportunities Committee and Council on progress and plans in an Annual Report.
- Ensuring that appropriate staff training and development is carried out.

Equal Opportunities Committee has responsibility for:
- The formulation of equal opportunities policies and procedures and for overseeing their implementation. The Committee reports to the Council of the University which has the authority to approve the policies.

Staff or students who act to obstruct efforts to promote the Equal Opportunities Policy or are the perpetrators of acts of discrimination may be subject to the University’s disciplinary procedure, which, if proven, may result in oral, written or final written warnings or suspension or dismissal/expulsion from the University.

3. Implementation of the Policy

Codes of practice and appropriate procedures will be developed and introduced to implement the Policy. The University will ensure that all students and staff and, so far as is practicable, others associated with the University are informed of the Policy, any associated policies and procedures and their responsibilities with respect to implementation.
The necessary training and support will be provided to those persons responsible for the implementation of the Policy.

The University will monitor the implementation and effectiveness of the Policy through the Equal Opportunities Committee which will report, as appropriate, to Council.

4. Reporting Breaches of the Policy

Any student or member of staff who believes he/she has been discriminated against on the grounds of race, ethnic origin, sex, marital or parental status, sexual orientation, religion or belief, disability, age or political belief or trade union membership may invoke the University's Student Complaints Procedure or Staff Grievance Procedure, as appropriate.

Where necessary, advice for staff on procedural matters may be obtained from Human Resources and advice for students may be obtained from the Student Progress Service.

Complaints of discrimination from applicants for staff posts or student places, from visitors and from others associated with the University should be addressed to the Registrar who will ensure that they are investigated and that the complainant receives a written response, and where appropriate that action is taken.

Acts of unlawful discrimination by an employee or a student will, if appropriate, be dealt with under the relevant disciplinary procedure.

The University will seek to protect individuals from any form of victimisation arising from their taking action in relation to their rights under the relevant legislation or making any complaint under these procedures.

5. Explanatory Notes

Sexual Orientation

This policy seeks to protect everyone i.e. gay, lesbian, bisexual and heterosexual people. Protection would occur where discrimination takes place because of an individual's actual or perceived sexual orientation or for those treated less favourably because they associate with LGBT (Lesbian, Gay, Bisexual or Transgender) people.

Religion or Belief

The legal definition of religion or belief is broad and defined as being any religion, religious belief or similar philosophical belief (not political belief). Whether a religion or belief falls within this definition will be for the courts to decide.

Disability

The Disability Discrimination Act 1995 defines disability as a 'physical or mental impairment which has a substantial and long-term adverse effect on the person's ability to carry out normal, day to day activities'.

Further information

Equality Challenge Unit
Third Floor
4 Tavistock Place
London
WC1H 9RA
020 7520 7060
www.ecu.ac.uk

Race Equality Policy

1. Aims and values

Newcastle University is a 'community of communities': national, ethnic, cultural, linguistic, religious and many more. The University is unequivocally committed to the goal of fostering mutual respect and understanding between its constituent communities and to promoting equality of opportunity among staff and students alike. It encourages all staff and students to enjoy and celebrate its diverse culture. The Race Equality Policy commits the University to the elimination of unlawful discrimination, the promotion of equality of opportunity and to the promotion of good relations between people of different racial groups. Through this policy the University aims to make race equality central to the way the University carries out all its public functions, so that it becomes an integral part of its policy development, the curriculum, teaching and learning, assessment, staff recruitment, training and career development, management, student support and guidance, admissions, access and participation, partnerships and community links, behaviour and discipline, service delivery, outsourcing, procurement and any other function.

2. Background

2.1 Institutional Racism

The Race Relations (Amendment) Act 2000 (RRAA) came into effect on 31st May 2002, as an amendment to the existing Race Relations Act 1976. This new piece of legislation was a direct outcome of the inquiry into the racist murder of teenager Stephen Lawrence. In his report, Sir William McPherson identified widespread institutional racism as "The collective failure of an organisation to provide an appropriate and professional service to people because of their colour, culture, or ethnic origin. It can be seen or detected in processes, attitudes and behaviour which amount to discrimination through unwitting prejudice, ignorance, thoughtlessness and racist stereotyping which disadvantage minority ethnic people" (Home Office, 1999: 6.34).

Some common manifestations of institutional racism can be found in appendix A.

2.2 Race Relations (Amendment) Act 2000

The Race Relations (Amendment) Act 2000 has placed a statutory general duty on all Public authorities to promote race equality and in particular:

- To eliminate unlawful racial discrimination
- To promote equality of opportunity and good relations between persons of different racial groups.

The Act has placed further specific duties on Higher Education Institutions to:

- publish a Race Equality Policy and an Action Plan for its implementation
- assess the effect of University Policies on staff and students from different racial groups
- Monitor, by racial group, the admission and progress of students and the recruitment and career development of staff
- Set out arrangements for publishing a race equality policy statement and the results of assessments
- Take reasonable and practical steps to publish the results of monitoring each year

The University Race Equality Policy has been developed by the Race Equality Sub-Committee with regard to the guidance and code of practice issued by the Commission for Racial Equality. It has been considered and approved.
by the Equal Opportunities Committee, and should be read in conjunction with the University Equal Opportunities Policy.

3. Responsibilities
All staff, students, visitors and others associated with the University, without exception, have a responsibility to ensure that their actions comply with the requirements of the Policy, namely to eliminate unlawful discrimination, promote race equality and promote good relations between people of different ethnic groups. There are a number of individuals and groups with specific responsibilities:

University Council is responsible for:
• Ensuring that the University acts within the requirements of the Race Relations Act and meets all its general and specific duties
• Ensuring that the race equality policy and its procedures are followed.

The Vice Chancellor has ultimate executive responsibility for:
• The effective development and implementation of Equal Opportunities Policies, including the Race Equality Policy.
• Ensuring that effective procedures are in place.

Managers (including Provosts, Heads of Schools, Heads of Service and all other line managers) are responsible for:
• Ensuring that the policy is implemented and maintained within their own Schools/Services
• Ensuring all staff are fully informed about their responsibilities and receive support and training in carrying them out
• Taking appropriate action against staff or students who discriminate for reasons of race, colour, nationality or ethnic or national origins. This may include invoking appropriate University disciplinary or grievance procedures, and initiating procedures for dealing with complaints
• Ensuring that the race equality policy and its procedures are followed within their areas of responsibility

The Director of Human Resources and the Head of the Student Progress Service have responsibility for:
• The implementation and monitoring of the policy as it pertains to staff and students respectively.
• Ensuring that appropriate staff training and development is carried out

Equal Opportunities Committee has responsibility for:
• The formulation of equal opportunities policies and procedures and for overseeing their implementation. The Committee reports to the Council of the University which has the authority to approve the policies.

Race Equality Sub-Committee has responsibility for:
• Advising the Equal Opportunities Committee on the development and implementation of the Race Equality Policy.

Staff or students who act to obstruct efforts to promote race equality or are the perpetrators of racial discrimination may be subject to the University’s disciplinary procedure, which, if proven, may result in oral, written or final written warnings or suspension or dismissal/expulsion from the University.

4. Specific Duties
Newcastle University will comply with the specific duties of the Race Relations (Amendment) Act 2000 by:

Planning and Developing Policy
Preparing and publishing a written statement of our Race Equality Policy and an Action Plan for its implementation.

Ethnic Monitoring
• Establishing an infrastructure to monitor, by racial group, the policies or functions relating to students including
  • Admissions and access
  • Achievement, progress and assessment
  • Student Welfare
  • Accommodation
  • Teaching and learning
  • Curriculum
  • Dignity at Work & Study

• Establishing an infrastructure to monitor, by racial group the policies or functions relating to staff including:
  • Recruitment & selection
  • Appraisal
  • Reward
  • Professional development
  • Staff support
  • Staff retention

• Establishing an infrastructure to monitor, by racial group the policies or functions relating the community and general public including:
  • Working with community groups
  • Procurement and outsourcing
  • Use of consultants

Impact Assessment
• Conducting an assessment to establish the effect of the University Policies on students from different racial groups including:
  • Admissions and access
  • Achievement, progress and assessment
  • Student Welfare
  • Accommodation
  • Teaching and learning
  • Curriculum
  • Dignity at Work & Study

• Conducting an assessment to establish the effect of the University Policies on staff from different racial groups including:
  • Recruitment & selection
  • Appraisal
  • Reward
  • Professional development
  • Staff support
  • Staff retention

• Conducting an assessment to establish the effect of the University Policies on community groups including:
  • Working with community groups
  • Procurement and outsourcing
  • Use of consultants
  • Comparing ethnic monitoring data with qualitative data.
  • Consultation with representative groups of staff and students, including racial minority groups.
• Consultation with community groups from outside the university.
• Prioritising functions where action is required
• Setting a three year action plan with key performance indicators, which determines frequency of monitoring
• Formulating an evaluation process

Publishing
• Setting out arrangements for publishing the race equality policy statement to all staff, students and the wider community.
• Setting out arrangements for publishing the results of assessments and monitoring each year.

Further details about arrangements for complying with the specific duties of the Act are available in the University of Newcastle’s Race Equality Action Plan.

5. Review of the Policy
In order to ensure that the University is making progress towards its Race Equality targets an appropriate reporting structure will be established which will set out how the Race Equality Sub-Committee can report on progress to the Equal Opportunities Committee and the University Council.

Consultation with staff and students will take place in order to raise awareness of the policy and to gain feedback on its contents. Feedback given will be considered when updating the Policy. The Race Equality Policy and Action Plan will be reviewed annually and updated as necessary.

6. Training and development
Staff development and training will be extremely important to the successful implementation of the Race Equality Policy. A training plan will be devised to ensure that senior managers are made aware of the implications of the Race Relations (Amendment) Act 2000, and their roles and responsibilities. The plan will also provide for race equality training to be rolled out across the campus, and embedded in other appropriate training and development activities, such as the Postgraduate Certificate of Academic Practice and the Management Development Programme.

7. Publishing the Policy
To support the implementation of this policy, it will be widely published, and will be made available to all new staff and students. It will be published on the internal and external University websites and available in hard copy format from the Human Resources Department, Student Office, Admissions and the International Office. A communication programme will be established to publish this policy, its associated action plan, results of assessments and monitoring.

8. Reporting alleged breaches
Alleged breaches of the policy, or incidents of racism or racial discrimination, should be reported. The most appropriate reporting mechanism will be dependent on the nature of the alleged incident. A quick guide to incident reporting is given in Appendix B, however if you are unsure please contact the following:

Staff related issues
• Julie Bullimore 0191 222 3440 (staff)
  Julie Bullimore@ncl.ac.uk
• Pamela Graham 0191 222 3440 (staff)
  Pamela.Graham1@ncl.ac.uk
• Richard Burrow 0191 222 6306 (staff)
  richard.burrow@ncl.ac.uk

Student related issues
• Karin Alderson 0191 222 5870 (students)
  k.a.alderson@ncl.ac.uk

Sources of additional help and support can be found in appendix C.

8.1 Incidents of Racial Harassment or Bullying
Incidents of alleged harassment or bullying (including racial harassment & bullying) of University staff or students should also be reported via the procedure attached to the Dignity at Work and Study Policy, available on the University Intranet at www.ncl.ac.uk/internal/hr/policy/dignity.htm or from the Human Resources Section or Student Welfare Services as above. Alleged perpetrators of racial bullying or harassment may be subject to the University’s disciplinary procedure, which if proven, may result in oral, written or final written warnings or suspension or dismissal/expulsion from the University.

Racist harassment or bullying are criminal offences. They should be reported to the University and you are strongly encouraged to report such incidents to the police. Reporting an incident to the police does not necessarily require a formal statement or appearance at court - you don't even have to give your name unless you choose to. By reporting incidents you can help the police to build up information about patterns of crime and help them catch the offenders.

You can report a racist incident in a number of ways:
• Through the University who will file the report on your behalf
  Julie Bullimore 0191 222 3440 (staff)
• Richard Burrow 0191 222 6306 (staff)
• Karin Alderson 0191 222 5870 (students)
• Northumbria Police 0191 214 6555
• Northumbria Police on-line
  www.northumbria.police.uk
• ARCH 24 Hour Racist Incident Reporting Line
  0800 032 3288

Appendix D gives some practical advice about reporting a racist incident to the police. These guidelines have been produced by the Racial Harassment Support Group in conjunction with Northumbria Police.

8.2 Racial Discrimination
Any student or member of staff who believes he/she has been discriminated against on the grounds of race may invoke the University's Student Complaint Procedure or Staff Grievance Procedure as appropriate. These procedures should also be followed by staff and students who witness incidents of racial discrimination.

Complaints of discrimination from applicants for staff posts or student places, from visitors and from others associated with the University should be addressed to the Registrar who will ensure that they are investigated and that the complainant receives a written response, and where appropriate that action is taken.

Acts of unlawful discrimination by an employee or a student will, if appropriate, be dealt with under the relevant disciplinary procedures.

The University will seek to protect individuals from any form of victimisation arising from their taking action in relation to their rights under the relevant legislation or making any complaint under these procedures.

8.3 Personal complaints and grievances
Staff and students also have access to personal complaints and grievance procedures. Details are available on the University Intranet or from the HR Section or Student Welfare Services as above.

8.4 General breaches
Any more general breach of the policy should be reported to the HR Projects Assistant or to the Director of Human Resources or Student Progress Service as appropriate or to the Chair of the Equal Opportunities Committee.
Any racist incident whether or not it occurs on campus and irrespective of whether university staff or students are involved may be reported to the local Agencies Against Racist Crime and Harassment (ARCH), of which the University is a member. ARCH is a multi-panel agency which is committed to:

- Developing an effective inter-agency response to racist incidents in the Newcastle.
- Reducing the number of racists incidents experienced in the city.
- Improving and increasing support available to victims.
- Improving the safety and welfare of those who live, work, study in and visit Newcastle.

Definition of a Racist Incident
The definition used by Newcastle University is that recommended in the Stephen Lawrence Report:
“A racist incident is any incident which is perceived to be racist by the victim or any other person”. (Recommendation 12)

Examples may include (this list is not exhaustive)

- Verbal abuse
- Unprovoked assaults
- Damage or threats of damage to property
- Sending of threatening and/or abusive correspondence (including email)
- Making threatening and or abusive phone calls or text messaging
- Graffiti

Appendix A – Common Manifestations of Institutional Racism

1. ‘it doesn't happen here’ - denying the possibility of discriminatory practice within an institution without accurate data, or consultation with those most likely to be on the receiving end of discrimination;
2. a ‘colour blind approach’, which treats everyone the same and which does not acknowledge or address the differing needs of black and minority staff and therefore potentially marginalizes their perspective;
3. abdication of one’s personal responsibility for tackling racism, by not challenging others’ behaviour or attitudes, as ‘it does not directly affect me’, or for fear of unpopularity or reprisals;
4. failing to incorporate race issues within day-to-day practice, procedures and mainstream activity;
5. Unwillingness to attend training or improve self awareness about ones own assumptions, behaviours or attitudes;
6. under-representation of specific groups within the organisation, particularly at a senior and influential level, the absence of a ‘minority’ perspective on key decision-making bodies;
7. a lack of commitment in practice, to implementing the policies that institutions subscribe to on paper. (UCL Race Equality Policy Note 2)

The full Race Equality Policy, is available along with sources of advice and further information about reporting an incident, at www.ncl.ac.uk/total/hr/policy/raceequality.htm

Students who wish to make a formal complaint under this Policy, should follow the Student Complaints procedure.

Policy and Procedure on Public Interest Disclosure

1 Introduction
1.1 The University is committed to the highest standards of openness, probity and accountability. It seeks to conduct its affairs in a responsible manner taking into account the requirements of the funding bodies, the standards in public life set out in the reports of the Nolan Committee, and the principles of academic freedom embodied in its Statutes and enshrined in the Education Reform Act 1988.
1.2 The Public Interest Disclosure Act, which came into effect on 1 January 1999, gives legal protection to employees against being dismissed or penalized by their employers as a result of disclosing in the public interest certain serious concerns. It is a fundamental term of every contract of employment that an employee will faithfully serve his or her employer and not disclose confidential information about the employer’s affairs. However, an individual within the organization should have the right to disclose certain matters of public interest without fear of reprisal.
1.3 This policy and procedure is intended to guide and assist members of the University who believe they have discovered malpractice or impropriety and to assist the University in the maintenance of appropriate standards of propriety and good practice. Members of the University are expected to use this policy and procedure in the first instance rather than report their concerns to a third party outside the Institution. There is, however, no intention to interfere with individuals’ civil duties and rights and to prevent them, for example, from reporting criminal activity to the police.

2 Scope of Policy
2.1 This policy and procedure provides for employees and students who believe that they have evidence of malpractice or impropriety which it would be in the public interest to disclose to bring their concerns to the attention of the appropriate University officer.
2.2 Instances of malpractice or impropriety might include:

- financial malpractice or impropriety or fraud
- failure to comply with a legal obligation or with the Statutes and Regulations of the University
- dangers to heath and safety or the environment
- academic or professional malpractice
- miscarriage of justice
- improper conduct or unethical behaviour
- criminal activity (not covered by the above)
- attempts to conceal any of the above.

2.3 The University already has in place a number of policies and procedures for such matters as grievance, complaints, discipline and harassment. This policy and procedure should not be used where a matter of concern should more appropriately be addressed through other approved University procedures. However, investigation of matters raised under this policy and procedure may subsequently lead to the invocation of other University procedures (see sections 4 and 6 below).
3 Safeguards

3.1 Protection
This policy is designed to offer protection to those employees or students who make a disclosure of the kind described in 2.1 above provided that the disclosure is made:

- in good faith
- in the reasonable belief that the disclosure is substantially true
- without a view to personal gain
- to an appropriate person/body (see section 4 below).

3.2 Confidentiality
All disclosures made in accordance with this policy and procedure will be treated in a confidential and sensitive manner. The identity of the individual making the disclosure will be kept confidential to the extent that the maintenance of such confidentiality does not hinder or frustrate any related investigation. However, the individual making the disclosure may need to provide a statement as part of the evidence required and the investigation process may lead to the identity of the individual being revealed.

3.3 Anonymous Allegations
This policy encourages individuals to put their name to any disclosures they make. Concerns expressed anonymously will be considered only at the discretion of the University.

In the exercise of this discretion, the factors to be taken into account will include:
- the seriousness of the issues raised
- the credibility of the concern
- the likelihood of confirming the allegation from attributable sources.

3.4 Untrue Allegations
Where investigation reveals that the allegation had no substance, no action will be taken against the individual who made the allegation provided that the allegation had been made in good faith and in the reasonable belief that it was substantially true. However, disciplinary action may be taken where clear evidence of malice has been established or where an individual persists in a vexatious or otherwise unreasonable use of this policy and procedure.

4 Procedures for Making a Disclosure

Initial Step
4.1 The individual should make the disclosure to the Registrar, as Secretary to Council, who will inform the Vice-Chancellor and the Chairman of Council unless:

(i) requested not to do so by the discloser, or
(ii) if the Chairman of Council is likely to be involved at any subsequent appeal.

In cases involving financial malpractice or impropriety, the Registrar will act in close consultation with the Vice-Chancellor, as the Accounting Officer for the University's public funding. If the disclosure is about the Registrar then the disclosure should be made to the Vice-Chancellor. If the individual does not wish to raise the matter with either the Registrar or the Vice-Chancellor, then he or she may raise it with the Chairman of the Audit Committee, if the issue falls within the purview of that Committee, or with the Chairman of Council.

Process
4.2 The Registrar will acknowledge receipt of the disclosure and will consider the information contained within the disclosure. He will determine whether prima facie the disclosure properly falls for consideration within the terms of this policy and procedure or whether the matter should more appropriately be considered through other approved procedures. If the Registrar determines that the disclosure is a matter for consideration within this policy and procedure, he will decide on the form of investigation to be undertaken.

This may be:
- to investigate the matter internally
- to refer the matter to the police
- to call for an independent inquiry

In some cases, a matter disclosed might be dealt with by agreed action without the need for further investigation. In determining the above the Registrar shall take such advice or undertake such consultation as may be necessary.

4.3 The Registrar will, as soon as is reasonably practicable, inform the person making the disclosure what action, if any, is to be taken, and the envisaged timescale for consideration of the case. The procedure will be implemented as expeditiously as is reasonably practicable.

4.4 Where the matter is to be the subject of an internal inquiry, the Registrar will consider who should undertake the investigation and its terms of reference. Internal audit will normally be instructed to investigate disclosures relating to financial malpractice or impropriety. In other cases, the investigation will be carried out by a senior member of staff independent of the area in which malpractice or impropriety is alleged to have occurred. In all cases no one having any part to play in reaching a decision on any matter raised through disclosure will take any part in investigating matters contained in the disclosure. Investigations will be conducted as sensitively and speedily as possible.

4.5 If a disclosure is to be referred to the police, the University will co-operate fully with the police in the course of police enquiries, but will take no action itself pending completion of police enquiries and possible action.

4.6 If a disclosure is to be referred for independent enquiry, internal investigation, other than that undertaken as part of such enquiry, will normally be suspended, pending completion of such independent enquiry.

5 Feedback
5.1 If no action is to be taken, the Registrar will inform the person making the disclosure of the reason in writing. In such event, the person will have the opportunity to request the Chairman of Council (or the Chairman of the Audit Committee if the subject of the disclosure is financial malpractice or impropriety) to review the disclosure and the reasons given for not taking further action. The Chairman of Council (or of Audit Committee, as the case may be) will consider the matter and will either confirm the decision that no further action be taken, or determine what further action is to be taken and through what process.

5.2 Where a decision is made to conduct an internal investigation into a disclosure, the person against whom the disclosure is made shall be provided with a copy of the disclosure and any evidence supporting it, and shall have the opportunity to make a full response to the disclosure during the course of the investigation. No investigation shall be concluded or action taken without the person against whom the disclosure is made having had a copy of the disclosure and any evidence supporting it, and an opportunity to make a full response to the disclosure. In making such a response, a person against whom an allegation is made has the right to be accompanied by a trade union representative, or a Union Society Officer in the case of a student, or another member of the University not involved in the area of University activity to which the allegation relates.

5.3 In the event of a decision to call for an independent enquiry, the person against whom the allegation is made will be provided with a copy of the disclosure and any evidence supporting it.
5.4 In the event of a decision to refer the matter to the police, the provision of a copy of the disclosure and any evidence in support of it to the person against whom the allegation is made will be at the absolute discretion of the police.

6 Subsequent Action
6.1 Upon completion of an internal investigation, a written report will be made to the Registrar. The outcome of an internal investigation or an independent enquiry or referral to the police will determine whether further action should be taken and, if so, the nature of the action, which might include the invoking of other approved University procedures such as disciplinary, grievance or complaint and harassment procedures, or reference to an appropriate external authority.

7 Reporting of Outcomes
7.1 A report of all disclosures and any subsequent action will be made by the Registrar to the Chairman of Council and the Audit Committee. The Chairman of Council, the Chairman of Audit Committee, and the Registrar will have joint responsibility for maintaining and overseeing this policy and procedure and for making appropriate reports to Council.

This policy and procedure will be the subject of periodic review and, if necessary, revision in light of experience and in consequence of any further advice which may be reviewed and, if necessary, revised in light of experience and in consequence of any further advice which may be issued in the higher education sector.

Student Disciplinary Procedures

1(a) Introduction
These procedures seek to ensure that student disciplinary matters are dealt with fairly and promptly at the appropriate level by those with clear authority from the University. The procedures apply to persons who are subject to the discipline of the University as prescribed in the General Regulations.

The purpose of the procedures is to regulate student behaviour in order to secure the proper working of the University in the broadest sense. As serious consequences may follow a finding of misconduct, it is necessary in every case for it to be shown that the conduct in question falls within the general definition before it may be characterised as misconduct.

(b) Definition of Misconduct
A breach of discipline is, for the purpose of these procedures, called an “act of misconduct”, and this will include, but not be limited to, failure to observe all University rules and regulations including local regulations for the governance of Academic Schools, Academic Service Departments and University Residences. The essence of misconduct under this code is improper conduct or improper interference, in the broadest sense, with the proper functioning or activities of the University, or those who work or study in the University. It also includes conduct which otherwise damages the University.

(c) Scope
These procedures apply to student behaviour in the University, and this extends to all buildings and grounds belonging to the University, including University Residences, Sports Grounds, the University Farms and the University Research Vessel. The procedures shall also apply to acts of misconduct committed outside the University when a student is away in a University context, or when it is found that there is some link to the University or its reputation. Discipline of students within the Union Society building shall be the responsibility of officials of the Union Society nominated by the Society. The Union Society has an agreement with the University which identifies matters which it will report as a matter of course to the University and matters which it will report to the Police. The agreement is subject to annual review. Examination and other assessment irregularities are dealt with in accordance with the University Procedure for Assessment Irregularities.

(d) Fitness for Professional Practice
As part of the function of the University, graduation from certain courses entails a graduate to practise in a profession or to obtain professional status. In the case of students of Medicine and Dentistry, special procedures exist for the certification of fitness to practise, and students found to have committed a disciplinary offence put their future career at risk. The Academic Registrar or her nominee shall, in addition to applying the standard procedures, be entitled to refer disciplinary cases involving such students to the Faculty of Medical Sciences Fitness to Practice Committee. In all other cases, the Academic Registrar or her nominee shall, in addition to applying the standard procedures, be entitled to refer a disciplinary case to the relevant Head of School, to consider whether a student's future professional position has been compromised and, if so, what action if any should be taken to inform the professional body.

(e) Examples of Misconduct
The following paragraphs elaborate upon, but do not limit the breadth of, the general definition of misconduct in Paragraph 1(b). The following shall, subject to the above, constitute misconduct:

i) disruption of, or improper interference with, the academic, administrative, sporting, social or other activities of the University, including offensive behaviour, whether on University premises or elsewhere; (University Council has previously approved a policy for the immediate management of disruptive behaviour on University premises.)

ii) obstruction of, or improper interference with, the functions, duties or activities of any student, member of staff or other employee of the University or any authorised visitor to the University;

iii) behaviour which brings the University into disrepute;

iv) intentional or reckless damage to, or defacement of, University property or the property of members of the University community;

v) misuse or unauthorised use of University premises, facilities or items of property;

vi) failure to disclose name and other relevant details to an officer or employee of the University in circumstances when it is reasonable to require that such information be given;

vii) failure to comply with a previously-imposed penalty under these procedures;

viii) acts of dishonesty, including theft, fraud, deceit, or deception in relation to the University, its staff or students;

ix) action likely to cause injury or impair safety on University premises, e.g. acts involving damage to or discharge without just cause of, or other misuse of or interference with, a Fire Extinguisher or other Fire Safety Equipment. (Such acts endanger the University community and is likely to result in a severe sanction.)

x) harassment of any student, member of staff, or any authorised visitor to the University, whether
sexual, racial or bullying; (The University has a published Equal Opportunities Policy and Procedure for Making and Dealing with complaints of Harassment and Bullying.)

xi) violent, indecent, disorderly, threatening or offensive behaviour or language whilst on University premises or engaged in any University activity;

xii) breach of the provisions of the University’s Code of Practice for Freedom of Speech;

xiii) conduct which constitutes a criminal offence where that conduct

i) takes place on University premises, or

ii) affects or concerns other members of the University community, or

iii) damages the good name of the University, or

iv) itself constitutes misconduct within the terms of these procedures.

(For the avoidance of doubt, the University may proceed under Student Disciplinary Procedures notwithstanding the instigation of any criminal proceedings.)

2 Procedures: General

(a) The University shall have the right to investigate any allegation of misconduct against a student, and may take disciplinary action where it decides, on the balance of probabilities, that an act of misconduct has been committed.

Any investigation into an alleged act of misconduct, whether carried out under the central or local procedures, shall normally include in its early stages an interview of the student(s) concerned by the relevant authorised person in accordance with the provisions for the Conduct of Hearings set out in paragraph 7.

(b) Definition of Authorised Person

Under the Local Procedure, the following persons shall be deemed to be the authorised person for dealing with student discipline:

• In Academic Schools: The Head of the School in which the misconduct occurs, or a nominated deputy

• In Academic Service Departments: The Head of the relevant Academic Service Department, or a nominated deputy

• In University Residences: The relevant Warden or Housing Manager, or a nominated deputy

Under the Central Procedure, all references to the Academic Registrar shall be taken to include anyone nominated by the Academic Registrar to act on her behalf.

(c) Allegations of misconduct which fall into categories i - vi in paragraph 1 (e) may be dealt with by the Academic Registrar or another authorised person. Offences in categories vii - xiii in paragraph 1 (e) may only normally be dealt with by the Academic Registrar unless committed in a University residence, in which case the matter may be dealt with by an authorised person under the Disciplinary Procedures for University Residences (Appendix III), provided that the matter does not constitute a serious criminal offence. The Academic Registrar may, however, in any particular case of alleged misconduct that would normally fall within her own jurisdiction, determine that it should nevertheless be dealt with by another authorised person.

3 Local Procedure

(a) Where an allegation of misconduct is made known to an authorised person, the matter may be dealt with under the Local Procedure, in which case the authorised person may consult with the Academic Registrar at any stage in the enquiry. If the decision is made to deal with the matter under the Local Procedure, the authorised person shall, subject to sub-paragraph (b), determine the matter using the appropriate Local Procedure as set out in

• Appendix I - Disciplinary Procedures for Academic Schools;

• Appendix II - Disciplinary Procedures for Academic Service Departments;

• Appendix III - Disciplinary Procedures for University Residences.

(b) The authorised person may refer the matter to the Academic Registrar for determination under the Central Procedure where the authorised person is of the opinion that the available sanctions are an inappropriate response, given the nature and severity of the offence, or where the case involves a repetition of misconduct.

(c) Where an authorised person is satisfied that a student has committed an act of misconduct, one or more of the following sanctions may be imposed.

i) A warning, orally and in writing, advising the student about their future conduct.

ii) Where a student has previously received a warning, or where the authorised person deems fit, a final warning.

iii) A compensation payment for the direct cost of reparations to property.

iv) Confiscation without compensation of items prohibited by rules and regulations relating to Academic Schools and Academic Service Departments.

v) A fine, up to a limit from time to time agreed with the Academic Registrar.

vi) Suspension from the use of an Academic Service or from the use of specified facilities belonging to an Academic School. Where such power is exercised the Academic Registrar shall be informed as soon as is reasonably practicable. The decision shall be subject to written confirmation by the Academic Registrar where the period of suspension is in excess of one month, or two weeks in the case of the Computing Service.

vii) In the case of Halls of Residence or other University accommodation, an authorised person shall have the right to impose such further sanctions as are, from time to time, approved by Council. For the avoidance of doubt, discipline in all University accommodation shall, in the first instance, be considered under the University’s Student Disciplinary Procedures for University Residences.

4 Central Procedure

Acts of misconduct which fall to be considered by the Academic Registrar under paragraph 2 (c) of these procedures, and acts in relation to which a case is referred from an authorised person under paragraph 3(b) of the Local Procedure, shall be dealt with under the Central Procedure.

(a) Procedure A

Where the Academic Registrar so decides, she shall have the right to deal with an allegation of misconduct. Where the Academic Registrar is satisfied that a student has committed an act of misconduct, one or more of the following sanctions may be imposed.

i) A warning, in writing, advising the student about future conduct. Where a student has previously received a warning, or where the Academic Registrar deems fit, the student may receive a final warning;

ii) A compensation payment for the direct cost of reparations to property;

iii) A fine.
(b) Procedure B

Where the Academic Registrar decides that a case is sufficiently serious, a Disciplinary Committee shall consider the case. Pending the hearing of an allegation of misconduct by a Disciplinary Committee the Academic Registrar may temporarily suspend a student from the University or from such facilities as the Academic Registrar shall determine. In such a case, the decision to suspend a student shall be reviewed by the Academic Registrar after every two week interval, and the Committee will hear the case, where reasonably practicable, within four weeks.

(For clarity, the Academic Registrar may suspend a student upon report of a serious allegation, pending further investigation.)

(c) The Disciplinary Convenor, appointed by Senate from time to time, shall determine whether the case shall be heard by a Disciplinary Committee of three Disciplinary Panel members or by a single Disciplinary Panel member. The Disciplinary Convenor shall nominate the members and Chair of the Committee or the single Panel member. The Academic Registrar shall provide such secretarial and administrative support as is reasonably necessary.

(d) The Academic Registrar shall not be a member of any Disciplinary Committee, but shall be responsible for the preparation and presentation of the charge or charges before the Committee. The Academic Registrar shall inform the student(s) concerned in writing of the allegations and shall inform the student(s) that the case is to be heard by a Disciplinary Committee. A member of administrative staff who has had no involvement in the case shall be appointed as secretary to the Committee and shall be responsible for sending the student(s) any relevant documents, the summoning of witnesses, and generally for the proper presentation of the case before the Committee.

(e) If the Committee is satisfied that the offence is not proven, they shall take no further action against the student. If the Committee is satisfied that the student committed the act of misconduct, one or more of the following sanctions may be imposed.

i) A warning, orally and in writing, advising the student about their future conduct. Where a student has previously received a warning, or where the Committee deems fit, the student may receive a final warning.

ii) A compensation payment for the direct cost of reparations to property.

iii) A fine.

iv) Suspension from the University or such part or parts as may be specified.

v) Expulsion from the University.

(f) A student expelled or suspended as a result of disciplinary proceedings shall have no right to a refund of fees.

5 Supplementary Provisions

(a) The money raised from all fines shall be credited to the Vice-Chancellor's Hardship Fund.

(b) Non-payment of compensation or fines levied under these procedures shall, for the purpose of General Regulation B 5, constitute a failure to fulfil a financial obligation to the University.

The full Student Disciplinary Procedure is available at www.ncl.ac.uk/spo/ and includes:

- The Disciplinary Appeal Procedure
- Appendix I - Disciplinary Procedures for Academic Schools;
- Appendix II - Disciplinary Procedures for Academic Service Departments;
- Appendix III - Disciplinary Procedures for University Residences.

Student Complaints Procedure

Introduction

1. The Complaints Procedure described below should be followed in cases where a student wishes to make a complaint about a service or member(s) of staff or another student within the University where it has not been possible to resolve the problem with the service or individual(s) concerned.

2. Before having recourse to the Complaints Procedure, a student should attempt to resolve a problem with the individual(s) concerned or consult his/her tutor or supervisor or head of School for help and advice. Only when these steps have failed, or when the student has good cause for not pursuing these means of resolving the issue, should the Complaints Procedure be invoked.

3. The University has complementary policies about expectations in respect of dignity at work and study, racial equality and equality of opportunities (See www.ncl.ac.uk/internal/hr/policy/policies. Students wishing to make a complaint about actions which are contrary to these policies shall do so by completing the student complaint form/procedure. They should also make it clear that their grievance relates to one of these specific policies.

Appeals resulting from Student Disciplinary Procedures are dealt with under separate arrangements.

There are also separate procedures for dealing with complaints relating to tenants, staff or service in University accommodation. The procedures are contained in the relevant information booklets supplied by the respective student residences.

The Complaints Procedure shall not apply to cases in which an individual wishes to appeal against an academic decision; in such instances the applicant should follow the Academic Appeals Procedure for Students. In order to avoid duplication of effort, the Academic Registrar shall determine whether a complaint shall proceed if an appeal has also been made in connection with the same/similar matter as the complaint.

Students shall not be disadvantaged for lodging a complaint in good faith.

Procedure

4. The complainant shall complete the Student Complaint Form available from the Student Progress Service and submit it for the attention of the Head of the Student Progress Service.

Complaints received more than 6 months after the event in question will not normally be investigated.
5. The Head of the Student Progress Service or nominee (referred to subsequently as the Complaints Officer) shall acknowledge receipt of the Complaint within 7 days of the receipt of the completed Complaints form and shall invite the complainant to discuss the matter. The complainant may be accompanied by a friend or representative at this meeting and at any other meetings under this procedure. The friend or representative may make representations with the permission of the Complaints Officer. No action may be taken in the case of complaints made anonymously.

6. Subject to the written consent of the complainant, the following provisions apply:

a) The Complaints Officer will determine whether the complaint merits detailed investigation or whether there are avenues which have not yet been explored and with which the Complaints Officer or another colleague could assist;

b) If it is decided that the complaint does merit investigation, the Complaints Officer will investigate it, consulting initially the relevant Head of School, senior tutor or equivalent colleague, but also seeking information as necessary from anyone else likely to be helpful in resolving the matter;

c) Once all necessary information has been gathered, the Complaints Officer shall decide whether it is possible to try to resolve the matter between the parties concerned;

d) If it is not possible to resolve the matter as in (c) above, or if the issues raised are particularly serious, the Head of the Student Progress Service shall refer the matter to the Pro-Vice-Chancellor who will Chair a Complaint Panel. The Complaint Panel shall be supported by a Complaints Officer. The Chair may co-opt further independent members of academic or administrative staff as deemed appropriate. If a complaint hearing is convened (paragraph e), the Welfare Officer or another independent officer of the Student Union shall also be a member of the Panel. The Chair and members of the Complaint Panel shall have no previous involvement in or close connection to the case. The Complaint Panel shall investigate the complaint and may seek any such information as appears to be necessary to reach a decision. A record shall be maintained of the proceedings.

e) Exceptionally, and where deemed appropriate by the Chair, the Complaint Panel may invite the complainant, and any other relevant parties, to a hearing. Any persons invited to attend a hearing by the Complaint Panel may be accompanied by a friend or representative, who may make representations with the permission of the Chair. The Complaint Officer will provide the appellant, as soon as is reasonably practicable, with relevant case papers in accordance with the requirements of the Data Protection Act 1998, together with written advice about the general nature of hearings. The conduct of the hearing shall, unless otherwise provided in this procedure, be for the Chair of the Complaint Panel to decide.

f) Appropriate action shall be taken in the light of the outcome of the investigation. The action will be intended to resolve the matter but may include the initiation of formal disciplinary action against a member of staff or a student under the University's disciplinary procedures;

g) On the completion of the investigation, which shall be conducted as soon as reasonably practicable, the Complaints Officer shall notify the complainant in writing as soon as possible of the outcome and of any consequential action to be taken.

7. If the complainant refuses to consent to the matter being investigated, no further action shall be taken, but the Student Progress Service shall keep a confidential record of the details of the complaint. In such cases:

a) in the absence of an investigation, the University will not be able to act on the complaint;

b) the record of the complaint shall be labelled: "In accordance with the wishes of the complainant, this complaint has not been investigated but will remain on a confidential file within the Student Progress Service for a period of twelve months as detailed in Service 7c of the Student Complaints Procedure"

c) a complainant may withdraw the refusal to consent by notice in writing to the Head of the Student Progress Service within 3 months of the date of receipt of the complaint. This time limit may not be extended.

8. If the Head of the Student Progress Service considers the complaint vexatious or frivolous, the complainant shall be advised that the complaint is dismissed as unfounded. Students shall not be disadvantaged for lodging a complaint in good faith. However, if a complaint is found to be malicious, the complainant may be subject to the University's disciplinary procedure.

9. Appeals

A complainant may seek a review of the outcome of their complaint only on the ground of procedural irregularity on the part of the Complaints Officer or Complaint Panel. A complainant wishing to lodge an appeal about the outcome of a complaint which has been investigated shall do so in writing, addressing the appeal to the Academic Registrar within 14 days of notification of the outcome of the investigation. The Academic Registrar may dismiss an application which does not provide a prima facie case on the specified ground.

If the Academic Registrar, having reviewed the original complaint file and sought any evidence as appears to be necessary to reach a decision, considers there to be grounds for the appeal, she may make appropriate arrangements to have the complaint reconsidered. Any further action or outcome will be decided by the Academic Registrar and will be final. There will be no further opportunities for appeal within the University.

There is no further appeal within the University. Provision for independent external review is made through the Office of the Independent Adjudicator. The Adjudicator’s role is to review the application by the University of its own internal procedures. Further information about the Adjudicator’s role and how to contact the OIA is available from www.oiahe.org.uk. A leaflet is also available from the Student Progress Service, Academic Office, 6 Kensington Terrace (or by email at student-progress@ncl.ac.uk).

10. Monitoring

The Head of the Student Progress Service shall make an annual report to University Teaching and Learning Committee of all complaints she and her staff have investigated, including:

- The number of complaints made, and upheld or rejected;
- The nature of the matters raised and any remedial action recommended and taken;
- The ethnic origin and gender of the complainants for equal opportunities monitoring.

Confidentiality

All information which a complainant, or anyone else, provides to the Student Progress Service, to the Pro-Vice-Chancellor, or to other officers dealing with the matter in the course of an investigation of a complaint, shall be treated as confidential, subject to the need to divulge information to investigate a case and any requirements of the Data Protection Act. It is equally important that the complainant also respects the need for confidentiality throughout the complaints process.
Further advice and guidance can be obtained from the Student Progress Service, Student and Academic Services, 6 Kensington Terrace or from the Student Advice Centre in the Union Society.

The web source for the procedure and form is: www.ncl.ac.uk/spso/
can be produced, then there is no problem, but real-life situations are usually far from being so clear-cut, with both the supervisor and the student likely to claim some of the credit. The University does not believe that it would be feasible to introduce a general condition into the PhD regulations automatically vesting IP derived from a PhD or MPhil project with the University; such a clause, affecting those who are essentially ‘self-employed’ would be unlikely to survive scrutiny by the courts. On the other hand, ownership of only some of the IP is also of little intrinsic value to the student. We believe, therefore, that the most effective way forward would be for the supervisor to agree with the student, in writing, before the research starts that any IP arising from the work carried out, and any which is additional to that provided before the start, should be assigned to the University, with the student being assured by the University that his or her interests will be taken fully into account. A draft letter for this purpose can be found on the website. All background IP of relevance should be properly documented, so that the starting position is clear, and the student invited to agree that any IP arising from his/her work would be added as appropriate to that background IP. A signed statement to this effect should be obtained.

Students Funded Directly by Third Parties
A student funded directly by a third party, such as an overseas government or agency, may claim that no agreement over IP is possible without consultation with his/her sponsor(s), and an opportunity should be given for such an agreement to be obtained. However, where such an agreement proves impossible to obtain, supervisors should consider carefully the nature of the project, recognizing that it may not be possible under these circumstances for the University to obtain protection for any IP generated.

Visiting Researchers
The position of visiting academic staff is similar, in principle, to students, in that funding for their visit may arise from a large number of sources, and clear conditions with respect to IP are the exception rather than the rule. As for studentships, much depends on whether the funding agency has an explicit agreement with the University.

Where this is the case, the visiting academic member of staff must agree to be bound by those conditions, and this agreement should be in writing. As is the case with studentships a more complex situation arises where the visitor is either self-funded, or funded by an agency with which we have no agreement. The position outlined above also applies in this case, with the added risk that the reports often required by such agencies may lead inadvertently to premature disclosure. This is a particular problem where, as is often the case, the visitor joins a research group which may seek to protect IP accumulated over some time, and which could be jeopardized either by disclosure or even by disagreement as to the author of the decisive inventive step. Where a visitor joins a group actively engaged in research likely to lead to commercializable intellectual property, the group leader should be signed both by the supervisor and the student. The student should be given one copy and the other signed original must be deposited with URO, since any legal steps needed will have to be undertaken by URO. Further general guidance about studentships is available in University Research Office. See http://www.ncl.ac.uk/business-directorate/

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary Table for Action on IPR of Students and Visiting Researchers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Action taken automatically by URO</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CASE Studentships</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commercially/Government Studentships funded through a contract with the University</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Research Committee funded Studentships</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charitable Foundations funded by contact through the University</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Research Council Funded Studentships</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Research Council Quota Studentships &amp; MAFF Studentships</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>School Studentships and Research Committee Part-funded Studentships</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Self-funded studentships</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Students funded directly by third parties (i.e. with no University Contract)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Visiting Researchers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Undergraduate Projects</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Policy and Procedure for Investigating Allegations of Research Misconduct (for staff)

**General Policy**

1.1 The University expects all staff who engage in research to observe the highest standards of integrity at all times. The Nolan Committee on Standards in Public Life identified seven principles that have relevance to best practice in the conduct of research. These are: selflessness, integrity, objectivity, accountability, openness, honesty and leadership. Together these principles provide a foundation for personal integrity that should be reflected in the professional conduct of research by every individual who contributes to research at the University.

1.2 All researchers should be familiar with, and conduct their research in accordance with the University's Code of Good Practice in Research. Research misconduct is least likely to arise in an environment where good open research practice is encouraged and where there is effective supervision at all levels. Heads of school and directors of research institutes are responsible for
establishing and communicating the standards, protocol and ethics for research relevant to their area, to all academic and research staff, and for ensuring adherence to these standards.

1.3 Allegations of research misconduct are fortunately rare, but the University takes any allegation very seriously and will ensure that all allegations are investigated in accordance with the policy and procedures set out in this document. The University is also committed to protecting its researchers from malicious accusations and will take action against any individual(s) responsible for such allegations.

1.4 This policy complements the University's policy on Public Interest Disclosure ("Whistleblowing policy"). Allegations of research misconduct made under Public Interest Disclosure will be referred by the Registrar, or, in his absence the Director of Business Development, to the Pro-Vice-Chancellor (Research) (PVC(R)), or if more appropriate to another senior officer following consultation with the Vice-Chancellor or, in his absence, the Deputy-Pro-Vice-Chancellor, and investigated in accordance with the policy and procedure set out in this document.

Scope

2.1 This document applies to all employees, honorary or visiting researchers and fellows conducting research within or on behalf of the University at the time the misconduct is alleged to have occurred. Allegations of misconduct are made by an individual or organization external to the University such an individual or organization will be informed of the University's policy and procedures and of the University's expectations with regard to compliance.

2.2 In this document the masculine gender includes the feminine gender and singular nouns and verbs include the plural and vice versa.

General Principles

3.1 Key definitions are presented in Annex 1.

3.2 All University employees or individuals working within the University have a responsibility to both the University and to the wider research community to report observed, suspected or apparent research misconduct as set out in these documents.

3.3 An individual reporting apparent misconduct has a responsibility to do so in good faith, to maintain confidentiality and to co-operate with any subsequent investigation or assessment.

3.4 The PVC(R) will, to the maximum extent possible, respect the privacy of those who in good faith report apparent misconduct and will make diligent efforts to protect their positions and reputations.

3.5 The PVC(R) will be supported in this procedure by a member of the Human Resources team, who will be responsible for ensuring that both the complainant and the respondent are kept fully informed of progress.

Preliminary Action (Stage 1)

4.1 Any member of the University who believes that an act of research misconduct has occurred or is occurring should report the allegation (with all relevant background) to the relevant Head of school or director of research institute. If an individual is unsure whether a suspected action constitutes research misconduct, s/he may discuss this informally with the head or director. If the head or director believes that the circumstances described do not meet the definition of research misconduct, s/he will advise the individual and if necessary take other appropriate action to address any specific issues. If the head or Director decides that the circumstances described meet the definition of research misconduct then s/he will request that the individual submits a formal allegation in writing to the Provost of the Faculty referencing this procedure.

4.2 If the individual is not satisfied with the response from the head of school or institute director or if, for any reason, the individual does not feel it appropriate to raise the matter initially with the head or director s/he may instead discuss the allegation direct with the research dean for the faculty. If the research dean believes that the circumstances described do not meet the definition of research misconduct, he will advise the individual and if necessary take other appropriate action to address any specific issues. If the research dean decides that the circumstances described meet the definition of research misconduct then he will request that the individual submit a formal allegation in writing to the Provost of the faculty referencing this procedure.

4.3 A complaint from a source external to the University will be referred direct to the Provost of the faculty concerned to carry out a preliminary assessment as described in the following paragraphs.

4.4 The Provost, assisted where appropriate by the head or director and the research dean, will review the allegation and will inform the individual against whom the allegation is made of the substance of the allegation and give him an opportunity to respond. If he is not satisfied with the response or believes that the reputations of any of the parties (including the University) will remain in jeopardy if the matter is not subject to independent assessment, he will proceed to the next stage of the procedure. As part of this preliminary action the Provost will also identify any funding source(s) for the research which is the subject of the complaint and identify whether there are any external parties such as collaborators who may be affected and notify this information to the PVC(R).

4.5 At this stage, all possible steps will be taken to protect the anonymity of the complainant and respondent until such time as a formal investigation is warranted under stage 3.

4.6 If the Provost decides that an assessment is warranted he will ask the head or director to arrange for all relevant research records and materials (including computers and computer discs) to be secured.

4.7 If the Provost decides that an assessment is not warranted, he will record his justification for that decision and inform the complainant and respondent of this outcome. This record must be copied to the PVC(R).

4.8 If the Provost has an interest in the matter this preliminary action will be carried out under the direction of the Provost of another faculty appointed by the PVC(R).

Initial Assessment (Stage 2)

5.1 Purpose

The purpose of the assessment is to determine whether there is prima facie evidence of research misconduct, not to reach a final conclusion as to whether misconduct occurred or who was responsible.

5.2 Notification Requirements

If the Provost decides that an assessment is warranted he will notify both the respondent and complainant in writing, and remind them of their obligation to co-operate in the assessment and to observe the confidentiality requirements. He will also inform the PVC(R) of the proposed action.

If the PVC(R) has a conflict of interest in the matter, the Vice-Chancellor or, in his absence, the Deputy-Vice-Chancellor, will appoint an alternative senior member of the University to fulfil the role of the PVC(R) set out in this procedure.

5.3 Appointment of Assessment Committee

The PVC(R) will appoint an assessment committee of three individuals (which should not include himself) with no conflicts of interest in the case and who have the appropriate expertise to evaluate the technical or academic issues. Normally at least one member of the committee will be appointed from a school or research institute outside the faculty concerned. The committee

shall be chaired by a member of the committee external to the faculty concerned appointed by the PVC(R).

5.4 Assessment Committee Terms of Reference and Procedure

The assessment committee should specifically limit its scope to that of evaluating the facts only to determine whether there is sufficient evidence of research misconduct to warrant an investigation.

Assessment will normally involve the committee in interviewing the complainant, the respondent (who may be accompanied by a friend, who may be a trade union representative, a work colleague, or other appropriate person), and key witnesses, including, if appropriate, external expert witnesses, and examining the relevant research records and materials. The Respondent may submit evidence to the committee.

The Assessment Committee should keep proper records of their proceedings. A written report should be prepared which states what evidence was reviewed, summarizes relevant interviews and includes a conclusion as to whether an investigation is warranted.

5.7 Time Limit for Completing Assessment Report

The assessment committee will complete the assessment and submit its report in writing within 30 working days starting from the date the committee was set up. Where circumstances clearly warrant a longer period, the PVC(R) may approve an extension of this time limit. The reason for the extension will be entered into the records of the enquiry and the report. The respondent and complainant will also be notified of the extension.

5.8 Comments by Respondent

The respondent against whom the allegation was made will be given a copy of the report and evidence considered by the assessment committee. The respondent must submit written comments on the report within 20 working days of receipt of the report. These comments will be attached as an addendum to the assessment report.

5.9 Decision by PVC(R)

After receiving both the report and the written comments of the respondent, if any are made, the PVC(R) shall determine whether to conduct a formal investigation, conclude the matter or take some other appropriate form of action. The PVC(R) shall inform the Vice-Chancellor of his decision, and shall send him a copy of the assessment report, and any comments submitted by the respondent, within five working days of receiving the report.

The PVC(R) will inform both the complainant and the respondent of his decision in writing.

Formal Investigation (Stage 3)

6.1 Purpose

The purpose of the formal investigation is to examine and evaluate all relevant facts to determine whether research misconduct has occurred and if so, the responsible person and the seriousness of the misconduct.

6.2 Notification Requirements

If the PVC(R) decides that a formal investigation will be conducted, he will notify both the respondent and the complainant in writing and remind them that they are expected to co-operate in the investigation. Failure to do so may render themselves open to disciplinary action by the University against them.

The PVC(R) shall, where required to do so under the terms of any funding conditions, notify any bodies that provide funding related to the research of the individual concerned, that an investigation is to take place. Similarly the PVC(R) shall also notify any other body related to the research concerned in the event that the University is contractually obliged to notify that body at this stage in the investigation.

6.3 Appointment of Investigation Committee

The PVC(R) will appoint an investigation committee consisting of at least three persons (which should not include himself), and a member of the Human Resources directorate. None of the investigation committee shall have served on the assessment committee or have been previously involved with the case. Normally at least one member of the committee will be appointed from a school or research institute outside the faculty concerned. The committee shall be chaired by a member of the committee external to the faculty concerned appointed by the PVC(R). Membership may include appointees external to the University if no qualified or competent members can be appointed from within the University. Members of the investigation committee must not have any conflicts of interest with the respondent or complainant or the case in question, and they must have the necessary expertise to examine the evidence, interview the witnesses and conduct the investigation. The investigation committee will keep written records and the committee will be provided with secretariat support by the Registrar.

The PVC(R) will notify the respondent of the proposed constitution of the investigation committee. If the respondent submits a written objection to any of the persons appointed to the investigation committee, the PVC(R) may replace the challenged person with a qualified substitute. If the PVC(R) does not replace the challenged person, the reasons for the objection and its over-ruling should be part of the investigation report. Not more than two challenges to the constitution of the investigation committee may be made by the respondent.

6.4 Investigation Process

The investigation will be initiated within 30 working days of the completion of the assessment if findings from that assessment provide sufficient basis for conducting an investigation.

The investigation will include examination of all documentation including relevant research data materials, proposals, publications, correspondence, memoranda, and notes of telephone calls, and any other documents deemed by the committee to be pertinent to the investigation. The investigation committee may call upon witnesses to be cross-examined and invite expert witnesses to comment and be cross-examined. The respondent will have the opportunity to be interviewed and may be accompanied at interview by a friend such as a trade union representative, a work colleague or other appropriate individual. The respondent or his/her friend may submit evidence to the committee and cross-examine witnesses. Whenever possible interviews should be conducted of all individuals involved in making the allegations, and other individuals who might have information regarding key aspects of the allegations. A verbatim record of these interviews should be prepared by the committee secretary to ensure factual accuracy, and included as part of the investigation report.

6.5 Time Limit for Completing Investigation Report

An investigation should normally be completed within 60 working days of the appointment of the investigation committee. This includes conducting the investigation, preparing the report of findings, making the report available for comment by the respondent and submitting the report to the PVC(R). An extension in this time may be approved by the PVC(R) where it is impracticable for the full process of the investigation to be carried out within this time-frame.

6.6 Investigation Report Contents

The final investigation report must state how the investigation was conducted, describe how and from whom the information was obtained relevant to the investigation, state the findings and explain the basis for the findings. It must also include the full verbatim reports of the interviews. The report must state explicitly whether in
the view of the investigation committee research misconduct has occurred.

6.7 Comments by the Respondent

The PVC(R) shall provide to the respondent a copy of the report and evidence considered by the investigation committee and offer the respondent an opportunity to comment on the report. Comments from the respondent must be submitted to the PVC(R) within 20 working days of receipt of the report and shall be attached as an addendum.

7 Outcome and Subsequent Actions (Sanctions/Disciplinary procedures)

The PVC(R) shall pass the investigation report together with comments if any, from the respondent, to the Vice-Chancellor or whoever is authorized under the University Statutes and Ordinances concerning staff discipline, to determine what action should be taken in accordance with the University's disciplinary procedures as set out in the Statutes. If it is decided that a formal disciplinary panel should be set up, the report of the investigation committee will form part of the evidence to be considered by the disciplinary panel.

If there is a finding of research misconduct at the conclusion of any disciplinary process, or if the respondent admits any research misconduct, the University may convey the findings to appropriate bodies. These may include the General Medical Council, or other professional body, any relevant grant-awarding body or any other public body with an interest, the editors of any journal which have published articles by the person against whom the allegation has been upheld, or any other body which in the opinion of the University is likely to be affected by the research misconduct in question. All such disclosure must be limited to misconduct upheld in relation to research relevant to such bodies or published by such journals. Where an appeal is lodged this fact will also be conveyed to the bodies concerned, as will the outcome of the appeal.

8 Restoration of Reputations

If the allegations are not upheld and especially in the event that the University becomes aware that the allegations have become public, the University will take all reasonable steps to restore the reputations of persons alleged to have engaged in misconduct. This will include taking appropriate steps to inform all parties previously notified of the alleged misconduct, of the outcome of the disciplinary procedure and to publish a notice stating the outcome of the investigation where so requested to by the respondent.

9 Appeal by the Complainant against a decision not to pursue the allegation.

If the complainant is not satisfied with any decision reached during this procedure, s/he may have recourse to the University's Policy and Procedure on Public Interest Disclosures.

10 Malicious Accusations

Where the outcome of a preliminary action, assessment or investigation indicates that an allegation has not been made in good faith, the University may decide to pursue disciplinary action against the complainant where s/he is employed by the University, and appropriate civil action through the courts against an external complainant.

11 Maintenance of Records

Records of assessments or investigations will be maintained for not less than seven years after the termination of the investigation. Where required to do so the University may make these records available to external organizations.

Annex 1 - Definitions

Allegation means a written statement setting out the grounds on which the complainant believes misconduct has taken place.

Assessment means information gathering and initial fact-finding to determine whether an allegation or apparent instance of research misconduct warrants an investigation.

Complainant means a person who makes an allegation of research misconduct.

Conflict of Interest means the real or apparent interference of one person's interest with another, where potential bias may occur due to prior or existing personal or professional relationships.

Good Faith Allegation means an allegation of research misconduct made by a complainant who honestly believes that research misconduct may have occurred. A complainant who recklessly disregards evidence that disproves an allegation has not made an allegation in good faith.

Investigation means the formal examination of all relevant facts to determine if misconduct has occurred, and if so, the responsible person and the seriousness of the misconduct.

Preliminary Action means the immediate evaluation by the PVC(R) of an allegation of research misconduct to determine whether the allegation falls within the scope of the definition of misconduct and whether there is sufficient evidence to warrant an assessment.

Respondent means the person against whom an allegation of research misconduct is directed, or the person who is the subject of the inquiry or investigation. There can be more than one respondent in any inquiry or investigation.

Research misconduct or Misconduct means fabrication, falsification, plagiarism or other practices that seriously deviate from those commonly accepted within the research community for proposing, conducting or reporting research. It does not include honest error or honest differences in interpretations or judgments of data.

Copyright Licence Agreement

This institution has a Licence with the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited to enable students and members of staff to copy extracts, within clearly defined limits (set out below) from books, journals and periodicals published in the United Kingdom, Australia, Canada (including Quebec), Denmark, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Iceland, The Netherlands, New Zealand, Norway, Republic of Ireland, South Africa, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland and by some publishers in the United States of America”.

What the Licence covers

The Licence permits the copying of extracts (whether the pages copied consist of text or graphics or are a combination of text and graphics) from most books, journals and periodicals published in the UK (and in the other Mandating Territories shown above), with the specific exception of those belonging to one of the categories of material defined in the next section.

The basic permission to photocopy extends to the copying (from paper on to paper) of:
• up to 5 per cent or one complete chapter (whichever is the greater) from a book;
• up to 5 per cent or one whole article (whichever is the greater) from a single issue of a journal;
• up to 5 per cent or one paper (whichever is the greater) from a set of conference proceedings;
• up to 5 per cent of an anthology of short stories or poems or one short story or one poem of not more than 10 pages (whichever is the greater);
• up to 5 per cent or one single case (whichever is the greater) from a published report of judicial proceedings.

What the Licence does not cover

The following Excluded Material is outside the scope of this Licence Agreement:

♦ printed music (including the words)
♦ bibles, liturgical works, orders of service
♦ maps, charts, or books of tables
♦ newspapers
♦ public examination papers
♦ industrial house journals
♦ workbooks, work cards and assignments
♦ ‘copying not allowed under the CLA licence’ titles
♦ private documents (fee-based tuition)
♦ works included on the Excluded Works list
♦ works published by non-participating US publishers
♦ works published outside Mandating Territories

For more information contact the University’s Copyright Licensing Co-ordinator – Robin.King@ncl.ac.uk